特高级教师

点拨®

知识
方法
素养

本书阅读策略4招·写作技法4招



九年级 英语 下 (JJ版)

含教材习题答案

吉林教育出版社

教辅资料站

电子教辅 试卷练习
知识总结 备课资源

扫码关注获取更多学习资料

特高级教师

点拨®

知识
方法
素养

九年级 英语 下 （JJ版）

主　　编：荣德基
本册主编：王秀兰



提分一定有方法

吉林教育出版社

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨 不只提分

这次考试你又是全班第一，有啥秘密操作呀？

《点拨》在手，高分我有。

《点拨》是什么？来给我讲讲！

来！搬板凳，记笔记！

来来来，晒晒你“朗读 敲黑板者”的范儿，分角色模仿人物表演朗读。

“敲黑板”栏目，无声的老师教我们怎么学知识。

批考点：标题作用

高度概括文章内容，是全文的线索。

“批考点”，深挖课文考点。

“阅读策略”，解密阅读题的答题方法。

“符号标注”，我养成了“读书必标注”的好习惯哦！

【句法分析】two hours 表示时间时视为一个整体，作主语时谓语动词用单数形式。

eg: Three years is a short time.

You have to study hard.

敲黑板 注意：英语中表示时间、距离、金额、度量等的词语作主语时，通常视作一个整体，谓语动词要用单数形式。

“文字批注”，既锻炼我的思维能力，也提高了我的语言表达能力哦！

阅读策略

推理判断法（应用于阅读理解中的深层理解题。做这类题时，我们需要纵观全文，理清文章脉络，推断作者意图，然后对所有的信息进行分析，推理判断出正确答案。）

拓展阅读

《点拨》一册在手，分数素养全有！

《点拨》，我要一套！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



目录

Unit 7 Work for Peace

魔法六维导图 …… 1
记忆大师 …… 1
Lesson 37 Don't Fight! …… 4
Lesson 38 Making School a Better Place …… 11
Lesson 39 Having Good Relationships in Your Community …… 18
Lesson 40 The UN—The Power of Words …… 24
Lesson 41 Jenny's Good Advice …… 29
Lesson 42 Peace at Last …… 34
Unit Review …… 38
素养：培养发现生活乐趣的能力 …… 6

Unit 8 Culture Shapes Us

魔法六维导图 …… 44
记忆大师 …… 44
Lesson 43 A Visit to Chinatown …… 46
Lesson 44 Popular Sayings …… 52
Lesson 45 Different Manners …… 58
Lesson 46 Home to Many Cultures … 64
Lesson 47 Good Manners …… 70
Lesson 48 Supper with the Bradshaws …… 77
Unit Review …… 83
素养：养成整洁卫生的习惯 …… 73

Unit 9 Communication

魔法六维导图 …… 90
记忆大师 …… 90
Lesson 49 Get Along with Others … 93
Lesson 50 Tips for Good Communication …… 99
Lesson 51 What Could Be Wrong? …… 106
Lesson 52 The Power of a Smile … 111
Lesson 53 Working in Groups …… 116
Lesson 54 How Embarrassing! … 121
Unit Review …… 126
素养：培养“保守秘密”素养 …… 119

Unit 10 Get Ready for the Future

魔法六维导图 …… 133
记忆大师 …… 133
Lesson 55 Look into the Future … 136
Lesson 56 Manage Your Time …… 143
Lesson 57 Best Wishes …… 151
Lesson 58 Ms. Liu's Speech …… 157
Lesson 59 Keep Your Choices Open …… 163
Lesson 60 Get a Good Education … 167
Unit Review …… 171
素养：培养“学会选择”素养 …… 141

参考答案及点拨 …… 178
教材习题参考答案 …… 188

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

全书考点索引

单词（按字母顺序排列）

absent 118
accept 72
achieve 160
adapt 114
admit 123
agreement 15
alive 69
allow 21
almost 154
although 49
anger 97
angry 36
anyway 16
as 113
asleep 22
avoid 21
beat 6
believe 154
besides 146
check 149
choose 141
communication 95
confident 155
consider 75
decision 165
distant 23
doubt 139
drop 148
each 79
effort 102
either 30
else 32
especially 81
even 113
experience 62
fall 161
fight 9
gentleman 9
graduate 153
hardly 96
honour 159
hope 50
however 27
human 57
if 103
imagine 26
including 16
invent 140
invite 72
join 114
judge 22
keep 165
last 27
likely 97
manage 139
maybe 81
neither 9
offer 74
option 23
own 160
percent 66
praise 61
private 61
promise 103
proper 103
provide 14
raise 14
refuse 118
relationship 20
remind 123
require 95
rest 67
satisfy 27
secret 119
seem 123
seldom 62
send 81
separate 8
service 8
set 104

微信公众号
教辅资料站
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



shape 60
silent 31
society 54
solution 97
sound 60
speech 159
spend 146
succeed 97
tap 123
though 60
tidy 73
treat 72
trouble 118
upset 21
waste 103
whether 55
without 95
wonder 155

短语（按字母顺序排列）

according to 68
a couple of 36
after all 32
a lot 142
any other 56
as for 141
at first 168
at the end of 79
a way to… 114
be about to do 7
be busy with 80
be full of 54
be home to 66
be ready for 79
be similar to 56
break down 7
by doing sth. 154
can't help but 81
come true 138
do with 80
dream of 82
encourage sb. to do sth. 55
figure out 108
from now on 119
get a chance to do… 170
get along with 20
go by 160
hang up 73
hold out 169
instead of 26
in the 1970s 68
in the end 15
jump in 8
leave…alone 109
look forward to 117
look into 138
make a difference 14
make sure 102
mean to do sth. 32
more than 67
not always 15
not…anymore 109
not only…but also… 21
on behalf of 162
on one's way to 159
on top of 147
other than 56
out of 8
pick up 161
rather than 22
run into 122
see sb. doing sth. 7
slow down 118
so far 119
so…that… 124
stay in touch 153
stop doing sth. 31
suffer through 26
take turns 62
thanks to 36
the number of 68
to get ready 169
try doing sth. 8

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

turn on 74
used to 107
when talking to others 102

句型（按字母顺序排列）

It + be + my first time doing sth. 75
It's fun to do sth. 6
It is/was the same with... 96
Of course not. 49
Why didn't you do...? 7

辨析（按本书页码排列）

辨析：win 与 beat 6
辨析：see sb. doing sth. 与 see sb. do sth. 7
辨析：separate 与 divide 8
辨析：offer, provide 与 supply 14
辨析：agree with, agree on 与 agree to 15
辨析：sleep, sleepy 与 asleep 22
辨析：instead of 与 instead 26
辨析：however 与 but 27
辨析：stop doing sth., stop to do sth. 与 stop...from doing sth. 31
辨析：else 与 other 32
辨析：mean to do sth. 与 mean doing sth. 32
辨析：thanks to 与 thanks for 36
辨析：whether 与 if 55
辨析：be similar to, be familiar with, be similar in 与 be familiar to 56
辨析：sound, voice 与 noise 61
辨析：in the + 年份 s/ 年份 's 与 in+ 年份 68
辨析：the number of 与 a number of 68
辨析：alive, live, lively 与 living 69
辨析：accept 与 receive 72
辨析：be ready for 与 get ready for 79
辨析：at the end of, by the end of 与 in the end 79
辨析：each 与 every 80
辨析：do with 与 deal with 80
辨析：maybe 与 may be 81
辨析：especially 与 specially 81
辨析：hard 与 hardly 96
辨析：lonely 与 alone 109
辨析：no more (not...anymore) 与 no longer (not...any longer) 109
辨析：join, join in, take part in 与 attend 114
辨析：manage to do 与 try to do 139
辨析：find, find out, invent 与 discover 140
辨析：except, except for, besides 与 but 146
辨析：such 与 so 148
辨析：forget 与 leave 153
辨析：believe sb. 与 believe in sb. 154
辨析：almost, nearly 与 hardly 155
辨析：speech, lecture, report 与 talk 159
辨析：achieve 与 come true 160
辨析：at first, first 与 above all 168
辨析：advice 与 suggestion; advise 与 suggest 169

语法（按本书页码排列）

并列连词（U7） 40
though 和 although 引导的让步状语从句（U8） 85
从属连词（U9） 128
"主将从现"原则——主从复合句中一般将来时与一般现在时的搭配（U10） 173
it 作形式主语（U10） 174

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

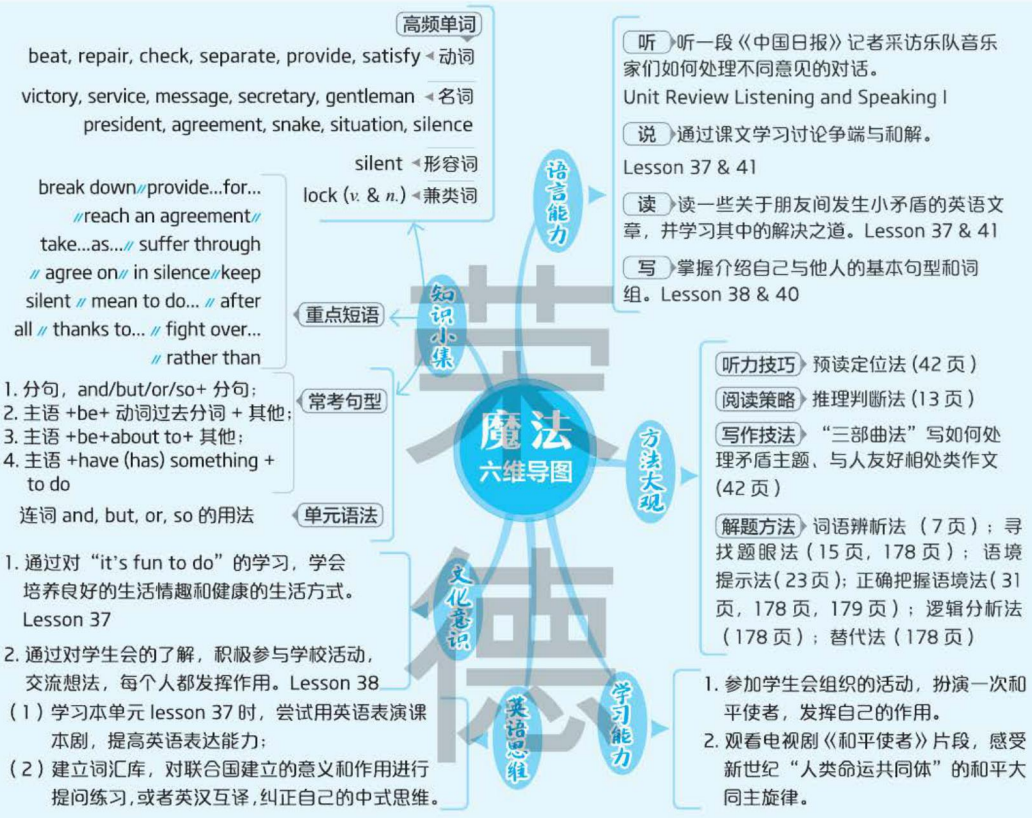
三步阅读学习法

课标中 对“读”的要求		1. 能根据上下文和构词法推断、理解生词的含义。 2. 能理解段落中各句子之间的逻辑关系。 3. 能找出文章中的主题，理解故事的情节，预测故事情节的发展和可能的结局。 4. 能读懂相应水平的常见体裁的读物。 5. 能根据不同的阅读目的运用简单的阅读策略获取信息。 6. 能利用词典等工具书进行阅读。 7. 课外阅读量应累计达到 15 万词以上。
课标中 对“写”的要求		1. 能根据写作要求，收集、准备素材。 2. 能独立起草短文、短信等，并在教师的指导下进行修改。 3. 能使用常见的连接词表示顺序和逻辑关系。 4. 能简单描述人物或事件。 5. 能根据图示或表格写出简单的段落或操作说明。
考情分析		阅读技能和写作技能是英语学科考试主要考查的两项内容，且阅读量近年来呈上升趋势，在有些省份的中考中写作分数所占的百分比也有所增加。阅读方面要求学生具有理解各种题材和体裁的书面材料并从各种材料中获取信息的能力，写作上要求学生具有运用所学语言知识与技能进行信息沟通、再现生活经历、描述周围事物、发表意见和观点的能力。简言之，就是要求学生在大量的语言材料有效输入与积累的基础上有可观的输出。
目　的		三步阅读学习法——整体式语篇学习法的目的是让学生在完整的语境中感知文本，在阅读中解读语言所表达的含义，在实际交流中体会语言所起的作用。从而提高学生的阅读技能、培养学生的阅读策略及自主阅读能力。
三步 阅读学习法	读前	有创意的读前活动是阅读课的导入关键，学生通过参与一些与课文话题相关的活动，激活了思维，从而产生阅读的愿望，并对课文进行有效的预测。
	读中	通过围绕 scanning，skimming 和 detailed reading 设置的一系列的活动，学生学会在阅读中思考，并逐步掌握一些阅读技巧，真正提高阅读水平。
	读后	阅读后的说和写活动是检查阅读理解效果和巩固运用语言材料的阶段。学生可通过复述、续写、缩写、改写、创写等读后活动，实现从语言输入到输出的迁移。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 7 Work for Peace

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Lesson 37

必背单词

1. **victory** *n.* 胜利
2. **beat** *v.* 击败；胜过；打 →beat 过去式 →beaten 过去分词
3. **repair** *v.* 修理；修补 →mend 修理 →fix 安装；修理
4. **service** *n.* 服务 →be in service 在使用中 →be out of service 不在服务区；有故障
5. **message** *n.* 信息；消息 →take a message 捎口信
6. **check** *v.* 检查；检验
7. **secretary** *n.* 秘书；干事
8. **separate** *v.* (使) 分开；分离
   adj. 单独的；独立的 →separate…from… 把混杂在一起的东西分开 →divide…into 把一个完整的东西分成几部分
9. **gentleman** *n.* 绅士；君子 →gentlemen(复数)→ladies(女士)

必背短语

10. break down 发生故障
11. the day before yesterday 前天；前日

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

12. be out of service 不在服务区
13. knock at 敲（门、窗、桌子等）
14. jump in 加入；打断谈话

必背句子

15. Me neither.
我也不。
16. **It's fun to win,** but I just love to play.
赢很高兴，但是我仅仅是喜欢打篮球。
17. Danny **is** just **about to** say something when he **sees** Steven **running** towards them carrying a basketball.
丹尼正要说话，这时他看见斯蒂芬拿着篮球朝他们跑过来。
18. **Why didn't you tell** me the game time was changed?
你为什么不告诉我比赛时间变了？

Lesson 38

必背单词

1. **president** *n.* 会长；总统；国家主席；董事长
2. **provide** *v.* 提供；供给 →provide sb.with sth. 给某人提供某物 →provide sth.for sb. 为某人提供某物
3. **agreement** *n.* 协议；同意 →in agreement with 同意，与……一致 →reach (an) agreement 达成一致

必背短语

4. make a difference 有影响；起（重要）作用
5. raise money 筹钱；集资
6. in the end 最后，终于
7. not always 不总是

必背句子

8. It's **not always** easy for us to **reach an agreement**.
达成一致对我们来说并不总是很容易。
9. It raises funds for school-wide activities, **including** social events, community projects and school reforms.
它为校级活动筹集资金，包括社会事件、团体项目和学校改革。

Lesson 39

必背单词

1. **community** *n.* 社区
2. **lock** *v.* & *n.* 锁
3. **interaction** *n.* 互相影响；互动 →interact *v.* 互相影响；互相作用
4. **upset** *v.*& *adj.* 打翻，心烦的；难过；沮丧 →upset（过去式）→upset（过去分词）→upsetting（现在分词）
5. **judge** *v.* 审判，评判；断定；*n.* 法官；裁判员；评判员
6. **argument** *n.* 争辩；争论 →argue *v.* 争辩；争论
7. **option** *n.* 选择
8. **calmly** *adv.* 冷静地；平静地 →calm *adj.* 冷静的；平静的
9. **distant** *adj.* 遥远的 →distance *n.* 距离

必背短语

10. in need 需要
11. not only…but also… 不但……而且……
12. be limited to… 被限制在……
13. rather than 而不是；（宁可……）也不愿
14. shout at 朝……大喊
15. after all 毕竟；终究

必背句子

16. Do this **not only** for family and friends **but also** for the people who live in your neighbourhood.
这样做不仅是为了家人和朋友，也是为了生活在你附近的人。
17. Social interactions **are** often **limited to** a "Hi!" on the street.
社交活动通常仅限于在街上打招呼。
18. However, **there may be times when** someone does something that upsets you.
然而，有时候，有人做了一些让你不开心的事情。
19. Avoid arguments especially ones that judge the nature of the person **rather than** the actions.

宋德基
微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

避免争论，尤其是那些评判人的本质而不是行为的争论。

20. **For example**, your neighbours are playing loud music while you try to **fall asleep**. 例如，当你试图入睡时，你的邻居正在播放很响的音乐。

Lesson 40

必背单词

1. **suffer** *v.* 受苦；受难 →suffer from 患……病；受……折磨 →suffer for 因……而受罚
2. **situation** *n.* 状况；形势
3. **satisfy** *v.* 使满意；使满足 →satisfy sb. of sth. 使某人确信某事；使某人相信某事 →be satisfied with sb. / sth. 对某人 / 某事感到满意

必背短语

4. suffer through 熬过；挨过
5. instead of 代替；而不是……

必背句子

6. The UN Security Council has fifteen members, **five of which** are permanent members—China, France, Russia, the U. K. and the U. S. 联合国的安理会有 15 个成员国，其中五个是常任理事国——中国、法国、俄罗斯、英国和美国。
7. Just **imagine** how difficult **it** is **to satisfy** all 193 members!
仅仅想象一下使所有 193 个成员国都满意是多么困难！

Lesson 41

必背单词

1. **silence** *n.* 沉默 →in silence 安静地，无声地 →keep silence 保持沉默 →break silence 打破沉默
2. **silent** *adj.* 沉默的，无声的 →be silent about / on… 对……未谈及 →fall silent 沉默下来 →keep silent 保持沉默
3. **elder** *n.* 老人；长辈 →older 更老的；年长的

必背短语

4. either of 两者之一
5. agree on 对……取得一致意见
6. in silence 沉默地；安静地
7. look down 向下看；俯瞰
8. mean to do 有意做……；打算做……
9. after all 毕竟；终究；还是

必背句子

10. I didn't **mean to do** it, Danny.
我没有打算那样做，丹尼。
11. **After all**, it's just a game!
毕竟，这只是一场比赛！

Lesson 42

必背单词

1. **rather** *adv.* 相当；宁可 →rather than 而不是；与其……不如……→prefer to do sth. rather than do sth. 宁愿做某事而不愿做某事
2. **peacemaker** *n.* 调解人

必背短语

3. thanks to 多亏……，由于……
4. be ready to do sth. 准备做某事
5. fight over 为……而争吵 / 斗争
6. agree with 同意；和……意见一致
7. rather than 而不是；（宁可……）也不愿……

必背句子

8. It is a really bad feeling **if** friends don't talk to each other for **a couple of** days.
如果朋友相互几天不说话，这确实是种糟糕的感觉。
9. Steven and I **were ready to** beat each other!
史蒂芬和我就要打起来了！
10. We all want peace **rather than** fighting.
我们都想要和平而不是打架。

单元必背语法

1. The other team was strong, **but** you beat them.
另一队很强大，但是你们打败了他们。
2. We live close to each other, **so** why didn't you come over and knock at my door?
我们俩住得很近，那你为什么不过来敲我的门？
3. The Spring Festival is usually in January **or** February. 春节通常在一月或二月。
4. He threw his basketball, **and** it hit me.
他把篮球扔了，球砸到了我。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 37 Don't Fight!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Have you ever missed a big event like a basketball game, a concert or a movie? Why did you miss it? 你曾经有没有错过像篮球比赛、音乐会或电影这样的大事件？你为什么会错过呢?
- When there is a dispute, how do you deal with it? 当发生争吵时，你会如何处理?

After a basketball game, Danny, Jenny and Brian are talking happily. 篮球比赛后，丹尼、詹妮和布赖恩正在高兴地谈论着。

课文朗读

Brian: That was quite a victory/'vɪktərɪ/, Danny! The other team was strong, but you beat /bi:t/①them. 那是一场完全的胜利，丹尼！对方队实力很强，但是你们打败了他们。

Danny: Thanks, Brian. It's fun to②win, but I just love to play. Everyone played so well!
谢谢，布赖恩。赢很高兴，但是我仅仅是喜欢打篮球。每个人都打得很好！

Jenny: By the way, where was Steven today? Is there anything wrong with him? 顺便问一下，今天斯蒂芬去哪里了？他出什么问题了吗?

(Danny is just about to③say something when he sees Steven running towards them carrying④a basketball. 丹尼正要说话，这时他看见斯蒂芬拿着篮球朝他们跑过来。)

Steven: Danny! Why didn't you tell⑤me the game time was changed?
丹尼！你为什么不告诉我比赛时间变了?

Danny: I did! I sent you an e-mail.
我告诉你了！我给你发了一封电子邮件。

Steven: Well, my computer broke down⑥the day before yesterday and it's still being repaired /rɪ'peəd/. Why didn't you call me?
噢，我的电脑前天坏了，它还在修理中。你为什么不给我打电话呢?

Danny: I **tried calling**⑦you, but your phone was out of⑧service/'sɜ:vɪs/⑨. I sent you a text message/'mesɪdʒ/. 我试着给你打电话，但是你的电话不在服务区，我给你发了一条短信。

Steven: I didn't check/tʃek/ my messages! We live close to each other, so why didn't you come over and knock at my door! You knew how important the game was to me! Now I've missed it!
我没有查看我的短信！我们彼此住得近，那你为什么不过来敲下我的门！你知道这场比赛对我来说多么重要！现在我已经错过了这次比赛！

Danny: Well, I was too busy all day, and I am NOT your secretary/'sekrətrɪ/!
好吧，我整天都很忙，而且我也不是你的秘书！

Steven: What?! 什么 ?!

(Steven throws his ball on the ground. It bounces/baʊnsɪz/ and hits Danny's head. 斯蒂芬把他的球扔到了地上，球弹起来撞了丹尼的头。)

Danny: Ouch/aʊtʃ/! Are you crazy?
哎哟！你疯了吗?

(Danny almost hits Steven, but Brian and Jenny jump in⑩to separate/'sepəreɪt/⑪them. 丹尼几乎要打斯蒂芬，但是布赖恩和詹妮赶紧把他们分开了。)

Jenny: Don't fight⑫, you two! You are good friends, not enemies. You should behave /bɪ'heɪv/ like gentlemen/'dʒentlmən/⑬. Let's talk!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

你们两个不要打架！你们是好朋友，不是敌人。你们应该表现得像绅士一样，我们谈谈吧！

I have nothing to say to a wild man!
我对野蛮人无话可说！

Me neither[13]!
我也是！

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.
阅读课文并回答问题。

1. Did Steven come to the basketball game?
斯蒂芬参加篮球比赛了吗？
2. How did Danny try to reach Steven?
丹尼试图怎样联系斯蒂芬？
3. Why did Danny get so angry with Steven?
为什么丹尼如此生斯蒂芬的气？

2 The words in italics are from this lesson. Tick the correct answers to complete the sentences.
斜体单词来自本课。勾出正确答案完成句子。

1. He is a *gentleman*. He is always _____.
他是一位绅士。他总是_____。
☐ polite
有礼貌的
☐ rude
粗鲁的
2. The cards of _____ colours are mixed together. Can you *separate* them?
_____颜色的卡片被混在了一起。你能把它们分开吗？
☐ same
相同的
☐ different
不同的
3. This TV _____. We need someone to *repair* it.
这台电视机_____。我们需要人来修理它。
☐ worked well
工作良好
☐ broke down
出故障
4. Li Ling leaves you a *message*. This means she wants to _____.
李玲给你留了个信儿。这意味着她想_____。
☐ tell you something
告诉你某事
☐ meet you at once
立刻见到你
5. He *beat* me at chess. I _____.
他下国际象棋赢了我，我_____。
☐ lost 输了
☐ won 赢了
6. I'm very _____ because I *missed* lunch.
我很_____因为我错过了午饭。
☐ hungry 饿的
☐ full 饱的

3 Listen to Jack's diary and complete it.
听杰克的日记并完成它。
课文听力

Dear Diary, 亲爱的日记：
I felt bad today. I had a _____ with my friend Tom. Our baseball team _____ the other team, and everyone was happy. But Tom missed the game because he did not get my _____. He was mad at me. I tried to explain, but he wouldn't listen. He almost _____ me. I became _____, too. We haven't talked to each other since our fight. I am not happy at all.
我今天感觉很糟糕。我和我的朋友汤姆_____。我们的棒球队_____另一个队，每个人都很高兴。但是汤姆错过了这场比赛，因为他没有收到我的_____。他很生我的气。我尽力解释，但是他不听。他几乎_____我，我也变得_____。我们争吵后一直没有和彼此说话。我一点也不高兴。

4 Have you ever had a serious dispute with a friend? What happened? Talk about it with your partner. 你曾经和你的朋友大吵过吗？发生了什么？和你的同伴谈论一下这件事情。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

·考点批注 ·考点应用

★**The other team was strong, but you beat them.**

① **beat**/biːt/ *v.* 击败；胜过；打 beat — beat — beaten

e.g. Do you think the Stars will beat the Bulls?

你认为明星队能打败公牛队吗？

We played very well, and we beat them.

我们打得很好，并击败了他们。

He is alive—his heart is still beating.

他还活着——他的心脏还在跳动。

beat 作动词，还可意为“敲打；（使）规律作响，作节奏运动”。

敲黑板 高频考点要牢记，宾语不同，胜不同

【易错】辨析：win 与 beat

win	宾语一般是事或物，如：比赛、战斗、奖品，即 game，war，match，prize 等。
beat	宾语一般是竞争对手。

一语辨异 I'm sure to win the game because nobody can beat me.

我确信我能赢得比赛，因为没有人能打败我。

考题在线 1 —Great! Our women's volleyball team _____ the gold medal in Rio Olympic Games on Saturday.

—Yes. We see the great spirit of Chinese women's volleyball team once again. [襄阳]

A. won B. beat C. lost D. missed

★**It's fun to win, but I just love to play.**

② 【高频】**It's fun to do sth.** 做某事很有趣（快乐）。

have fun doing sth. 做某事很开心

e.g. It's fun to meet you. 遇到你很开心。

We had fun riding our bicycles to the beach yesterday.

我们昨天骑自行车去海滩玩得很开心。



核心素养之文化意识

培养发现生活乐趣的能力

◆生活中充满了乐趣，生活的每一刻都是独一无二的人生画卷，享受生活，让每一刻都美丽绚烂(splendid)，让我们从生活中的点滴中发现美，享受美(enjoy the beauty in our lives)。在日常生活中，我们应培养良好的生活情趣(cultivate the active attitude towards life)，快乐生活。

◆【素养行动】给自己的生活制订一个合理的计划，例如利用课余时间看看有益身心健康的书、电影，也可以定期参加些集体活动，在过程中收获成长，体会生活中的乐趣。

◆【素养行动结果】培养学生发现生活的乐趣的能力，以积极健康的方式生活。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**Danny is just about to say something when he sees Steven running towards them carrying a basketball.**

③ **be about to do 即将做**

be about to do 表示即将发生的动作，在时间上指最近的将来。

e.g. The new school year is about to begin. 新学年即将开始。

I was about to watch TV when my mother came back.

我正要看电视，这时我妈妈回来了。 必须用 when

④ **see sb. doing sth. 看见某人正在做某事**

辨析：see sb. doing sth. 与 see sb. do sth.

see sb. doing sth.	看见某人正在做某事（表示动作正在进行），后常有 when 引导的从句或表示过去的一个时间点。**e.g.** I saw him talking with the teacher when I passed by. 当我经过时，我看见他正与老师谈话。
see sb. do sth.	看见某人做某事（的全过程）。**e.g.** I saw him hit Li Lei's head with a ball. 我看见他用球打李雷的头了。

✓ see sb. 后跟动词要记清：看见过程需用 do；正在进行用 doing。

考题在线 2 I saw her _____ flowers in the garden when I passed by. [天水]

A. to water　　B. water　　C. watering　　D. watered

点拨：考查非谓语动词的用法。句意：我路过时看见她在花园里浇花。see sb.doing sth. 看见某人正在做某事，固定搭配。

★**Why didn't you tell me the game time was changed?**

⑤ **Why didn't you do…? 你为什么不……?**

这是 Why don't you do...？的过去形式，表示提建议。

e.g. Why don't you take a vacation? 你为什么不休假呢?

Why don't you go shopping? =Why not go shopping?

（你）为什么不去购物呢? → Why don't you +动词原形？= Why not +动词原形？

考题在线 3 — I'm tired out after three-day work day and night.

— _____ relax yourself? Go out and enjoy the natural beauty. [扬州]

A. Why not　　B. Why don't　　C. What about　　D. Shall we

★**Well, my computer broke down the day before yesterday and it's still being repaired.**

⑥ **break down 坏掉，出故障，失败，垮掉**

break down 为固定搭配，在本句中表示“（机器、车辆等）出故障”。

e.g. I walked to school because the bus broke down on the way.

我步行去上学，因为公交车在半路出故障了。

Your body will break down if you work too hard.

如果你工作过分努力，你会把身体搞垮。

Our plans have broken down. 我们的计划失败了。

break down 还可表示“（计划、谈判等）失败；（身体、精神）垮了；（谈话、通讯等）中断；毁坏”等多种含义。

考题在线 4 This washing machine _____. It needs to be repaired.

A. worked well　　B. broke down　　C. ran up　　D. went on

点拨：词语辨析法。句意：这台洗衣机坏了，它需要修理。work well 运转良好；break down 坏掉；run up 升起；增长；go on 继续。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

try to do sth. 表示尽自己最大能力做某事，等同于 try one's best to do sth.。

★**I tried calling you, but your phone was out of service.**

⑦【高频】**try doing sth.** 表示试着做某事

e.g. I'm going to try cooking a fried egg this evening.

今晚我要试着做一个煎鸡蛋。

I was very sleepy. I tried to keep my eyes open, but I couldn't.

我很困。我尽力地睁着眼，但我做不到。

⑧ **out of 的用法** 离开，脱离

e.g. Fish cannot live out of water. 鱼儿离开水就不能活。

从……里面出来 I got out of bed. 我起床了。

用……制作 I made a basket out of wire. 我用金属丝编了个篮子。

⑨ **service** /'sɜːvɪs/ *n.* work done by one person or group that benefits another **服务**

service 作名词，表示“服务”时，是不可数名词。

e.g. Were the tourists satisfied with the service at your hotel?

观光者对你们旅馆的服务满意吗？

【易错】与 service 相关的短语：

① be in service 在使用中

② be out of service 不在服务区

e.g. Do you know how long it has been in service?

你知道它投入使用有多久了吗？

Sorry, the number you dialed is out of service.

对不起，您拨打的电话不在服务区。

★**Danny almost hits Steven, but Brian and Jenny jump in to separate them.**

⑩ **jump in 的用法**

e.g. When he saw us playing games, Tom jumped in immediately.

看到我们在做游戏时，汤姆马上加入。（热切地）参与，欣然加入

跳入，一步进入（汽车等） Jump in, Tom. There is a seat for you in the car.

快进来，汤姆。车里有你的座位。

⑪ **separate** /'sepəreɪt/ *v.* **（使）分开；分离** /'seprət/ *adj.* **单独的；独立的**

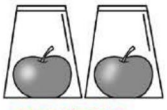
separate 作动词，意为“使分开，分离”，常与 from 搭配。

e.g. Separate the bad apples from the good ones. 把坏苹果和好苹果分开。

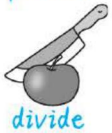
My son wants a separate room. 我儿子想要个单间。

separate 还可作形容词，意为“单独的；独立的”。

【易错】辨析：separate 与 divide



separate



divide

辨析

- separate 表示“把结合或混合在一起的东西分开”。常用于 separate...from
- divide 表示“把一个完整的东西分成几部分”。常用于 divide...into

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. The river separates this village from that one.
这条河把这个村庄和那个村庄分开了。
My mother divided the cake into four. 我妈妈把这块蛋糕分成了四份。

A good book is a light to the soul.
好书是心灵的明灯。

★Don't fight, you two!

⑫ **fight** /faɪt/ *v.* 争吵；打架；战斗，打仗

fight 还可作名词，意为"打架，打斗"。

e.g. The workers were hurt in a fight. 工人们在一场打斗中受了伤。
They are fighting for freedom. 他们正为自由而战。
The patient is fighting against diseases.
那位病人正在同疾病做斗争。
They fought with France against Germany at that time.
那时候他们与法国一起对抗德国。
Look, the dogs are fighting over a bone.
看，那些狗正为一块骨头而争斗。

①fight for 后接抽象名词，意为"为（事业、自由、真理、权利等）而斗争/战斗"。
②fight against 后接名词，意为"同……做斗争"。
③fight with 只接表示人和国家的名词，表示"与……一起对抗"。
④fight over 意为"为……而争吵/争斗"。

考题在线 5 —I think I've got a bad cold, Doctor. Shall I take some medicine?
—No need. Your body itself is able to _____ the virus. Just drink more water and rest.
A. catch　　B. fight　　C. lose　　D. hide
点拨:catch 意为"抓住"，fight 意为"对抗"，lose 意为"失去"，hide 意为"隐藏"。

★You should behave like gentlemen.

⑬ **gentleman** /'dʒentlmən/ *n.* 绅士

复数形式 gentlemen

e.g. Ladies and gentlemen, here is something important to tell you.
女士们先生们，有点要事得告诉你们。
Jack is one of the most careful milkmen.
杰克是最认真的送奶工之一。

gentleman 是由两个词构成的合成词。类似的合成词后面的词是 man 或 woman，变成复数时将字母 a 变为 e。

★Me neither!

⑭ 【高频】**neither** /'naɪðə/ *adv.* 也不；*adj.* 两者都不；*pron.* 两者都不

e.g. —Bob is never late for school. 鲍勃上学从来不迟到。
—Me neither. =Neither am I. 我也从不迟到。
She can't reach the book on the shelf and neither can I.
她够不到书架上的书，我也够不到。
Neither he nor you are from Canada. (=Neither you nor he is from Canada.) 你和他都不来自加拿大。

Me neither. 与 Neither... I. 同义，意为"我也不"，表示前面叙述的否定情况也适合后者。

neither...nor... 意为"既不……也不……"，连接主语时谓语动词遵从"就近原则"，即与所靠近的主语保持一致。

考题在线 6 —Do you plan to watch a talent show or a sports show tonight?
— _____. I can't stand them. I plan to watch a sitcom. [临沂]
A. Neither　　B. Both　　C. None　　D. Either

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

点拨:考查不定代词。由答语中的 I plan to watch a sitcom. 可知，两者都不选。neither 表示“两者都不”，none 指(三者或三者以上)没有一个。



考题在线 7 Neither my sister nor I _____ been to Xi'an before.

[百色]

A. have never　　B. have ever　　C. has never　　D. has ever

点拨:考查主谓一致及副词辨析。neither…nor… 意为“既不……也不……”，它连接两个并列成分在句中作主语的时候，后面的动词遵循“就近”原则，因此横线处所填的谓语动词和 I 保持一致，排除 C 和 D。neither…nor… 表示否定，而 never 又表示否定，二者不能重复。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. C　3. A　4. B　5. B　6. A　7. B

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见178页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成单词

1. The food is good at the hotel, but the s_____ is poor.
2. The manager did not accept her as his s_____.
3. We've got the m_____ that you passed the exam.
4. The police wanted to s_____ them from each other.
5. You must c_____ your paper carefully before you hand it in.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. Why not _____ (bring) your cousin with you to visit the museum?
7. Ladies and _____ (gentleman), please take your seats.
8. We _____ (beat) the strongest team in the football match, so we _____ (win) first prize this term.
9. It's fun _____ (go) with someone you like.
10. My computer _____ (break) down. So I have to repair it today.

三、单项选择

11. We should divide all the potatoes_____ two piles and separate the good ones _____ the bad ones.
A. from; by　　B. into; from
C. into; into　　D. from; into

12. The boys are going to have fun _____ pictures.　【导学号：2994592】
A. draw　　B. draws
C. to drawing　　D. drawing

13. —Anny, my mother never gets up late for my breakfast. What about your mother?
—My mother, _____. Mothers in China do more for us children.

[达州改编]

A. too　　B. also
C. as well　　D. neither

14. —Is Jack in the next room?
—Well, it's hard to say. But I heard him _____ loudly when I passed by just now.
A. speak　　B. to speak
C. spoken　　D. speaking

15. The two students are fighting. You should _____ to _____ them.
A. jump in; divide　　B. jump in; separate
C. jump on; divide　　D. jump on; separate

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 38 Making School a Better Place

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Is there a student council in your school? What does it do? 你们学校有学生会吗？它是干什么的？
- Who do you think can work towards peace? Can you do it too?
  你认为谁会为和平而工作？你也会这样做吗？

I think we should all work for peace.
我认为我们都应该为和平而努力。
Each of us can make a difference①.
我们每个人都会起作用。

课文朗读

My name is Danielle /dæn'jel/. I'm in Grade 9 this year, and I'm president /'prezɪdənt/ of the student council at my school. Most junior high schools in Canada have a student council /'kaʊnsl/. Members of the councils are chosen by students. 我叫丹妮尔。今年我上九年级，我是我们学校学生会主席。大多数的加拿大初中都有学生会，学生会的成员是由学生选出来的。

Student councils work to make schools better places to learn. In the council, we share our ideas, interests and concerns with teachers and others. Sometimes, we plan school-wide activities. In December, we decided to raise② money for an organization /ˌɔ:gənaɪ'zeɪʃn/ that provides/prə'vaɪdz/③ food for poor people in our city. How did we get the money? We organized a special basketball game in the school gym. Lots of students and their parents came to watch. We sold tickets and, in the end④, we made about $300. 学生会工作是为了使学校成为更好的学习场所。在学生会里，我们会与老师和其他人交流我们的想法、业余爱好和担忧。有时候，我们会计划全校范围的活动。在 12 月，我们决定给一个为我们城市中的穷人提供食物的机构募捐。我们怎样得到这笔钱呢？我们在学校体育馆组织了一场特殊的篮球比赛。很多学生及他们的家长都来观看。我们出售门票，并且，最后，我们赚了大约 300 美元。

During student council meetings, we have to work together, but it's not always⑤ easy for us to reach an agreement/ə'gri:mənt/⑥. The students are from many different cultures. We have different religions/rɪ'lɪdʒənz/, wear different clothes or speak different languages at home. Sometimes there are serious disputes /dɪ'spju:ts/. Anyway⑦, we are all friends, so we try hard to understand each other. 在学生会会议期间，我们必须一起工作，但是达成一致对我们来说并不总是容易的。学生们来自许多不同的文化。我们有不同的宗教信仰，穿不同的服装，或者说不同的方言。有时候会有激烈的争吵。尽管如此，我们都是朋友，所以我们尽量相互理解。

I think we should work together towards peace in our schools and in the world. We need to learn about different countries and make friends with people from other cultures. 我认为我们应该为我们学校和世界的和平而一起努力。我们需要了解不同的国家并和来自其他文化的人们交朋友。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Dig In 拓展

A student council is a group of students that shares ideas, interests and concerns with teachers and school principals. It raises funds for school-wide activities, including social events, community projects and school reforms. 学生会是一个与老师和校长交流想法、业余爱好和担忧的学生团体。它为全校范围的活动，包括社会事件、社区项目和学校改革筹集资金。

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文并判断正 (T) 或误 (F)。

1. Danielle is president of the student council at her school.
丹妮尔是她学校的学生会主席。 (　　)
2. The teacher chooses students as members of the student council.
老师选择学生作为学生会的成员。 (　　)
3. The purpose of student councils is to make schools better places to learn. 学生会的目的是为了使学校成为更好的学习场所。(　　)
4. It is easy for everyone in the student council to agree with each other.
学生会的每个人会很容易地同意彼此的观点。
(　　)

2 Make sentences with "provide...for" using the given information.
根据所给的信息，用"provide...for"造句。

1. this organization/food/poor people
这个组织 / 食物 / 穷人
→This organization provides food for poor people. 这个组织为穷人提供食物。
2. the hotel/a shoe-cleaning service/guests
这家旅馆 / 清洁鞋服务 / 客人们
→_____
3. the rich land/enough food/the people
这块富饶的土地 / 足够的食物 / 人们
→_____

3 Fill in the blanks with "and", "but", "or" or "so".
用"and"，"but"，"or"或"so"填空。

1. The Spring Festival is usually in January _____ February.
春节通常在一月_____二月。
2. I have two new classmates. One is Sandra _____ the other is Mary.
我有两名新同学，一位是桑德拉_____另一位是玛丽。
3. She doesn't like the colour, _____ she likes the style.
她不喜欢这种颜色，_____她喜欢这种款式。
4. Go right now, _____ I will punish you!
立刻去，_____我会惩罚你！
5. We have Mother's Day and Father's Day here, _____ no Children's Day.
我们这里有母亲节和父亲节，_____没有儿童节。
6. A tablet has no keyboard _____ mouse, _____ it is easy to carry.
平板电脑没有键盘_____鼠标，_____它容易携带。
7. The bud will open up _____ turn into a flower.
这个花蕾会开放_____变成一朵花。
8. I have no brothers _____ sisters.
我没有兄弟_____姐妹。

Learn to learn 学会学习

A conjunction is a part of speech that connects two words, phrases, clauses or sentences.Look for more sentences using "and", "but", "or" or "so", Can you find some rules? 连词是连接两个单词、短语、从句或句子的言语的一部分。寻找更多运用"and"，"but"，"or"或"so"的句子。你可以发现一些规则吗?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4 **Work in groups of three to complete this activity. Student A writes the first part, Student B writes the second part, and Student C combines the two parts with a conjunction (and, but, or, so).**

三人一组合作完成这个活动。学生 A 写第一部分，学生 B 写第二部分，学生 C 用连词（and, but, or, so）把（以上）两部分连起来。

Example: 例子：

Student A　We are friends.

学生 A　我们是朋友。

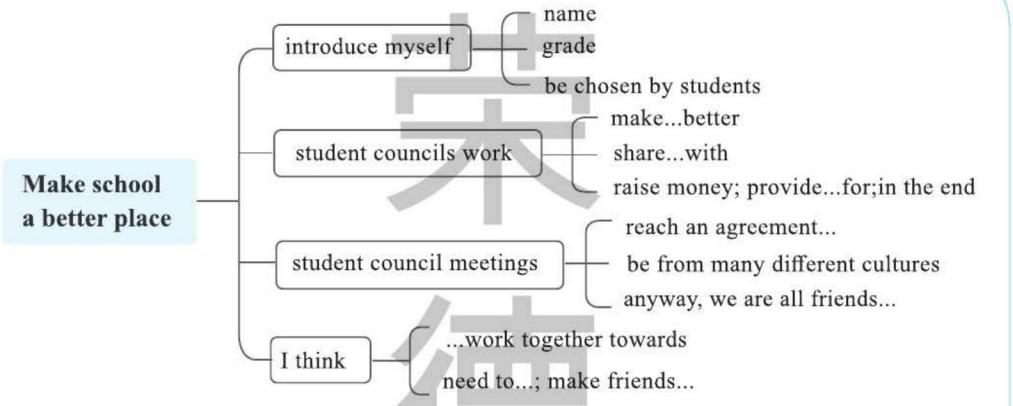
Student B　Sometimes we have disputes.

学生 B　有时我们争吵。

Student C　We are friends, but sometimes we have disputes.

学生 C　我们是朋友，但有时我们争吵。

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练　专攻中考阅读 60分

☞（答案见178页）

Ⅱ 阅读策略

推理判断法（应用于阅读理解中的深层理解题。做这类题时，我们需要纵观全文，理清文章脉络，推断作者意图，然后对所有的信息进行整合分析，推理判断出正确答案。）

Ⅱ 阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 Lesson 38，回答问题

1. What's the main idea of Paragraph 2?

（主旨大意题）

二、细读文章，完成下列任务

2. What do the student councils do?

（细节理解题）

A. They work hard at school.

B. They share ideas and plan activities.

C. They raise money for an organization.

D. B and C.

3. ⊙ Why is it difficult for the members of the student council to reach an agreement?

（推理判断题）

A. Because they are good friends.

B. Because the students have different religions and ideas.

C. Because they need to work hard.

D. Because they are members of councils.

☞温馨提示：本书中此板块带⊙的题均运用阅读策略中讲解的方法。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·考点批注　　·考点应用

和 difference 有关的短语

make some difference 有些作用 / 影响

make no difference 没有作用 / 影响

make much difference 有很大作用 / 影响

★**Each of us can make a difference.**

① **make a difference** 有影响；起（重要）作用

e.g. Fresh air makes a difference to our health.

新鲜空气对我们的健康有影响。

The rain makes some/no/much difference to the game.

这场雨对比赛有些 / 没有 / 有很大影响。

考题在线 1 — Have you noticed that Anna's spoken English is greatly improved?

—Yes, she sets us a good example. Hard work always _____. [深圳]

A. makes a deal　B. makes a difference　C. makes a problem

点拨：考查短语辨析。A 项表示“达成协议”；B 项表示“对……有影响 / 有改变 / 有重要作用”；C 项表示“制造问题”。

★**In December, we decided to raise money for an organization that provides food for poor people in our city.**

raise money for 的同义词组为 raise funds for。

raise 的用法：
① 饲养，喂养，及物动词
②举起，抬起，及物动词

② **raise** /reɪz/ *v.* 筹钱；集资　raise — raised — raised

e.g. They are raising funds/money for the poor.

他们正在为穷人筹集资金。

We raised chickens at home to get some eggs in the past.

在过去，我们在家养鸡产蛋。

You can raise your hand if you have any questions.

如果你有任何问题，你可以举起手来。

provide 常构成的结构：

① provide +with+ 即 provide sb. with sth. 给某人提供某物

② provide+ +for+ 即 provide sth. for sb. 为某人提供某物

③ **provide** /prə'vaɪd/ *v.* to give someone the things they need to live 提供；供给

高频考点，人前人后，介词不同！就黑板

e.g. The peasants provide us with grain and vegetables.

农民们给我们提供谷物和蔬菜。

He provides them with all food and money.

他给他们提供所有的食物和钱财。

They provided some necessary support for the sufferers.

他们为受难者提供了一些必要的援助。

辨析：offer，provide 与 supply
① offer 表示主动给别人提供某物，常用于 offer sb. sth. 或 offer sth. to sb. 结构。

offer to do sth. 主动提出做某事

e.g. He offered me a glass of wine.

他主动给了我一杯酒。

She managed to provide her children with food and clothing.

她设法使她的孩子有饭吃，有衣穿。

Our farm supplies the market with fruit and vegetables.

我们的农场为市场提供水果和蔬菜。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 2 Many tourists prefer five-star hotels because they think expensive hotels always _____ guests with better service. [泰州]

A. prevent B. protect C. present D. provide

点拨：本题采用寻找题眼法。句意：许多游客宁愿选五星级旅馆，因为他们认为昂贵的旅馆总是为客人提供更好的服务。根据后面的 with 可知用 provide sb. with sth. 为某人提供某物。

② supply 通常指定期"供应"，强调供给或补充所需物品，常用于 supply sb. with sth. 或 supply sth. to sb.。

★**We sold tickets and, in the end, we made about $300.**

④ **in the end 最后，终于**

e.g. In the end, he made much money. 最后，他挣了很多钱。

He calmed down in the end. 他的情绪终于平定下来。

in the end 意为"最后"，相当于 at last/finally。

考题在线 3 —How was your skating lesson last week?

—Not bad. Although I fell over many times, I managed to skate at last. [深圳]

A. in the end B. at present C. at times

点拨：考查介词短语同义词组转换。at last 意为"最终，最后"。in the end 意为"最终"； at present 意为"此时此刻"； at times 意为"有时"。原句意思是"尽管我摔倒许多次，我最终还是学会了滑冰"。

★**... but it's not always easy for us to reach an agreement.**

⑤ **not always 不总是**

e.g. The rich are not always happy. 有钱人未必总是幸福。

I do not always believe what he says. 我并没有始终相信他所说的话。

⑥ **agreement** /ə'gri:mənt/ *n.* when people have the same opinion as each other **协议；同意**

e.g. They had an agreement never to talk about work at home. 他们约定在家中绝不谈工作。

I'm in entire agreement with you. 我完全同意你的观点。

The two sides were unable to reach an agreement. 双方未能达成一致意见。

We agree to leave at once. 我们同意马上离开。

agreement 常用短语：
① in agreement with 同意，与……一致
② reach (an) agreement 达成一致

agreement 的动词为 agree，意为"同意"，其用法为：agree to do sth. 同意做某事

辨析：agree with, agree on 与 agree to

- 辨析
  - agree with：是指出自主观愿望的"赞成"、"同意"。
  - agree on：指"双方或多方在……方面取得一致意见"，后面可以跟名词或动名词。
  - agree to：指"接受，认可"，常指并非出于主观愿望的"同意"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

e.g. They might not agree with his opinions. 他们可能不同意他的意见。

Can we agree on a date for the next meeting?
我们能不能为下次会议确定一个日期?

They agreed on coming on Sunday. 他们同意周日来。

Why didn't you agree to our plan? 你为什么不同意我们的计划?

The more you learn, the more you feel ignorant.
博学才知才疏学浅。

考题在线 4 根据句意及所给汉语意思写出句中所缺的单词。 [天水]

After discussing the project several times, they reached an _____ (协议) finally.

点拨:句意:经过多次讨论这个项目,他们终于达成了_____。根据句意及汉语意思可知 agreement 符合语境,由不定冠词 an 可知要用单数形式,reach an agreement 达成协议。

★**Anyway, we are all friends, so we try hard to understand each other.**

⑦ 【难点】**anyway** /'eniweɪ/ *adv.* 不管怎样;无论如何;至少;不论用何种方式

e.g. It may rain, but we shall go anyway.
也许会下雨,可我们无论如何都要去。

Do you know of any way to stop a person snoring?
你知道有什么方法可以制止一个人打呼噜吗?

- anyway 相当于 anyhow,位于句首、句中或句末。
- any way 表示"任何(一种)方法;任何方式"。

考题在线 5 Laowang hasn't made up his mind whether to come or not; _____ Xiaozhang is coming.

A. any way B. anyway

C. any more D. anywhere

点拨:句意:老王来不来还没决定,至少小张会来。any way 表示任何方法;anyway 表示无论怎样、至少;any more (不)再;anywhere 表示任何地方。

★**It raises funds for school-wide activities, including social events, community projects and school reforms.**

⑧ **including** /ɪn'kluːdɪŋ/ *prep.* 包括,包含

必须置于它所说明的名词或代词之前,由它所构成的介词短语可以放在句末、句中,有时也可以置于句首。

including—include

- include 作动词,意为"包括,包含",后可接名词或动名词。强调所包括之物在整体中能被明确界定为几个部分。

e.g. There are about twenty people here, including two children.
这里大约有 20 个人,其中包括两个孩子。

The price includes both the house and furniture.
这个价格包括房子(的价格)和家具(的价格)。

考题在线 6 Many cities in China, _____ Beijing, have been deeply affected by dirty air.

A. including B. behind C. without D. beyond

点拨:考查介词。句意为:中国许多城市,包括北京,都受到污染空气的极大影响。四个选项分别意为"包括;在……后面;没有;超越"。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. agreement 5. B 6. A

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见178页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成单词

1. Xi Jinping is the _____ (主席) of China.

2. Parents always try to _____ (提供) a comfortable environment for their children. [新疆]

3. Finally we reached an _____ (协议).

4. _____ (无论如何), you have to make a decision.

5. The UN is an international _____ (组织).

二、选择短语，并用其适当形式填空

raise funds for, make a difference, provide... with, in the end, reach an agreement

6. We will _____ them _____ rooms.

7. They are _____ a new laboratory.

8. They can _____ on the problem.

9. _____, he sang a song to us.

10. Does his absence _____ to your work?

三、单项选择

11. Each of us _____ a new schoolbag last week.

A. gave B. is given

C. was given D. were given

12. They all _____ Laura about building a museum here.

A. waited for B. handed in

C. agreed with D. knocked at

13. Everyone can make _____ to our society.

A. different B. an difference

C. a difference D. no difference

14. To protect the environment, supermarkets don't _____ free plastic bags for shoppers.

A. take B. show

C. provide D. carry

15. After nine years' hard work, <u>finally</u> his dream came true.

A. at times B. at the moment

C. at once D. in the end



Success is not delivered but earned through efforts.
成功并非唾手可得，必须靠自己去努力争取。

禁德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 39 Having Good Relationships in Your Community

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

批 体裁：
议论文

批 文章结构：
并列式

批 句子：（加"▲"处）
if 引导虚拟语气表明这种情况实现的可能性较小或根本不能实现，从而让读者理解人们之间存在分歧是正常的。在一个群体中，人们要相互理解、包容！

批 句子：（彩色中括号处）
身边常见的例子看似普通，实则反映出了一个道理——邻里之间不和谐的人际关系。从而展开下文的论述。

批 句子：（画"﹏"处）
文章多次使用祈使句语气较强烈，给读者在处理人际关系方面提供了很好的建议。

原文译文 · 导读

Pre-reading（读前）

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What should you do to get along with ① the people around you?
  你应该做什么来和周围的人相处?
- How should you communicate with people who are doing things you don't like or understand?
  你应该如何与那些正在做你不喜欢或不理解的事情的人沟通？

While-reading（读中）

- What should you do if someone does something that upsets you?
  如果有人做了让你不开心的事，你应该做什么?
- How can you create a relationship of mutual respect and understanding? 你怎样才能创造一种相互尊重和理解的关系呢?

❶ To work towards a peaceful life, you should always try to develop good relationships ② with the people around you. Be kind and help those in need. Do this not only for family and friends, but also ③ for the people who live in your neighbourhood.
为了过上平静的生活，你应该尽力和周围的人建立良好的关系。善待他人，帮助那些需要帮助的人。这样做不仅是为了家人和朋友，也是为了住在你周围的人。

课文朗读

❷ People in your community might have different ways of living and thinking. This doesn't mean that they're wrong and you're right. If everyone had the same ideas, the world would be a boring place.
你所在社区的人可能有不同的生活方式和思维方式。但这并不意味着他们是错的，你是对的。如果每个人都有同样的想法，世界将会是一个无聊的地方。

❸ [Today, in many cities, people usually lock their doors after work and don't see their neighbours much. Social interactions are often limited to a "Hi!" on the street.] However, there may be times when someone does something that upsets ④ you. If this happens, discuss the matter in a friendly way. This allows ⑤ you to express your ideas without damaging your relationship. Avoid ⑥ arguments especially ones that judge ⑦ the nature of the person rather than ⑧ the actions. For example,

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

your neighbours are playing loud music while you try to fall asleep⑨. Should you politely suggest they lower the volume? Or should you angrily shout at them? The first option⑩ is clearly better. By calmly examining any problems, you create a relationship of mutual respect and understanding. After all, good neighbours are better than distant⑪ relatives.

今天在许多城市，人们通常下班后锁上门，不经常见到他们的邻居。社交活动通常仅限于在街上打招呼。然而，有时候，有人做了一些让你不开心的事情。如果发生这种情况，友好地讨论这件事，这可以让你在不破坏你们关系的情况下表达你的想法。避免争论，尤其是那些评判人的本质而不是行为的争论。例如，当你试图入睡时，你的邻居正在播放很响的音乐。你应该礼貌地建议他们降低音量，还是愤怒地对他们大喊大叫？第一个选择显然更好。通过冷静地审视任何问题，你们可以建立一种相互尊重和理解的关系。毕竟，远亲不如近邻。

批句子：（画"="处）

用谚语作为结尾，总结概括性强，语言精练，且照应文章主题，使得文章结构紧凑。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔（见42页）

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and tick the things that help develop good relationships in your community.

读课文，在可以帮助建立友好社区关系的事情上打对钩。

☐ Offer help to those in need. 给那些有需要的人提供帮助。

☐ Respect your neighbours and be kind to them. 尊重你的邻居并友善对待他们。

☐ If your neighbours have different ways of living, tell them they are wrong.
如果你的邻居有不同的生活方式，告诉他们他们是错的。

☐ If your neighbours do something that upsets you, discuss the matter in a friendly way.
如果你的邻居做了一些打扰你的事情，用一种友好的方式商议一下。

☐ If your neighbours play loud music, force them to turn it off immediately.
如果你的邻居放音乐很大声，立刻逼迫他们关掉。

2 Circle the correct prepositions to complete the sentences. 将正确的介词圈起来完成句子。

1. He is always ready to help those (in/with) need. 他总是乐意帮助那些（在……中 / 用）需要帮助的人。
2. We wish to develop a long-term business relationship (with/for) you.
我们希望（和 / 为）你建立长期的商业关系。
3. I have to limit my talk (of/to) 20 minutes. 我不得不将我的谈话缩短（的 / 到）20 分钟。
4. As a matter of fact, most disputes can be solved (in/to) a friendly way.
事实上，大部分的争端可以（用 / 到）一种友好的方式解决。
5. One of the best ways (on/of) learning a foreign language is to use it in practice.
最好（在……上 / 的）学习外语的方式之一就是将它运用到实际当中。

3 There is one mistake in each sentence. Can you find and correct it?

每个句子都有一个错误。你能找出并改正它吗？

1. The task wasn't as bored as I first thought. 这个任务并不像我开始想象中那样无趣。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. I left the day away without do anything at all. 我一天什么都没做。

3. His parents won't allow him staying out late. 他的父母不允许他在外面呆到很晚。

4. He put the animals—dogs, cats, birds and snakes on the ship and lock the door.
他将动物们——狗、猫、鸟和蛇放到船上，然后锁上门。

5. There are time when my neighbour asks me to look after her pet dog.
有时候我的邻居让我去照顾她的宠物狗。

4 Work in pairs. Suppose you are asked to give some tips about working towards peace in the community. Please list 3 to 5 "Do's and Don'ts" for people in your community. 小组活动。假如要求你给出一些关于致力于社区和平的建议。请为你们社区的人们列出 3 到 5 条“能做”和“不能做”的事。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点批注　·考点应用

★What should you do to get along with the people around you?

① get along with 与……相处 → 相当于 get on with

get along/on well/badly with 与……相处好/不好

e.g. —How can you get along with your classmates?
你和同学相处得怎样?
—Very well. 很好。

考题在线 1 相信我，你早晚会意识到和别人和睦相处是多么重要。 [无锡]
Believe me. You'll realize _____ others sooner or later.
点拨：注意感叹句的运用 how + *adj.* /*adv.* + 主语 + 谓语 + 其他。

考题在线 2 Don't worry! I'm sure you'll _____ your classmates if you are kind and friendly to them. [呼和浩特]
A. catch up with　B. be pleased with
C. get on well with　D. agree with
点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意：别担心。我肯定只要你对同学善良和友好，你会和同学们相处好。catch up with 赶上；be pleased with 对……感到满意；get on well with 与……相处融洽；agree with 同意。

A friend in need is a friend indeed.
患难朋友才是真朋友。

★To work towards a peaceful life, you should always try to develop good relationships with the people around you.

② relationship /rɪ'leɪʃnʃɪp/ *n.* 关系；联系

e.g. We have a working relationship. 我们是工作上的关系。

单词变形：relative *n.* 亲戚

考题在线 3 —What do you think of The Belt and Road Initiative（一带一路倡议）?
—Great! It will help China improve the _____ with those related countries. [达州]
A. relationship　B. agreement　C. environment　D. information

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：考查名词词义辨析。relationship 关系；agreement 协议；environment 环境；information 信息。improve the relationship 改善……关系。

★**Do this not only for family and friends, but also for the people who live in your neighbourhood.**

③ **not only…but also…** 不但……而且……

e.g. Reading books can not only open up your eyes but also can help you make friends. 读书不仅让你开阔视野，而且可以帮助你交到朋友。

Both my father and my mother like to use mobile payment.
我爸爸和我妈妈都喜欢用手机支付。

Neither he nor his wife enjoyed the holiday on the beach.
他和他的妻子二人都不喜欢在沙滩上度假。

You can come either on Monday or Tuesday.
你可以周一也可以周二来。

not only... but also... 可以与 both... and... 互换，但是 not only ...but also 连接两个并列主语时，谓语动词遵循"就近原则"。

both...and.... 两者都……

neither...nor... 既不……也不……

either...or... 要么……要么……

考题在线 4 Not only you but also I _____ interested in the cartoon called *Peppa Pig*. [广元]

A. am　　B. is　　C. are



点拨：考查主谓一致。句意：不但你，而且我也对卡通片《小猪佩奇》感兴趣。not only...but also 连接两个并列的主语时，谓语动词遵循就近原则，即根据靠近动词的主语确定谓语动词的形式。根据空格前的主语 I 可知 be 动词要用 am。

★**However, there may be times when someone does something that upsets you.**

upset — upset — upset — upsetting

④ **upset** /ʌp'set/ *v. & adj.* 使（某人）苦恼或心烦；难过；沮丧

e.g. This decision is likely to upset a lot of people. 作动词
这项决定很可能会使许多人不快。

There is no reason to get so upset. 完全没有理由如此心烦意乱。 作形容词

★**This allows you to express your ideas without damaging your relationship.**

⑤ **allow** /ə'laʊ/ *v.* 允许

allow sb. (not) to do sth. 允许某人（不）做某事

e.g. Online shopping allows us to buy things we want at home.
网上购物允许我们在家就可以买到我们想要的东西。

考题在线 5 My parents don't allow me _____ TV on school nights. [河池]

A. to watch　　B. watch　　C. watches　　D. watching

点拨：考查非谓语动词的用法。句意：我父母不允许我在上学的晚上看电视。allow sb. to do sth. 是固定搭配，表示"允许某人做某事"。

★**Avoid arguments especially ones that judge the nature of the person rather than the actions.**

⑥ **avoid** /ə'vɔɪd/ *v.* 避免

avoid sth. 避免某事

e.g. All through lunch he had carefully avoided the subject of the

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

house. 整个午饭期间，他一直在小心翼翼地回避房子的话题。

avoid doing sth. 避免做某事

Drink lots of water to avoid becoming dehydrated. 大量饮水以免脱水。

考题在线 6 —What time do you get up in the morning on school days?
—I get up at 7:00 every morning to avoid _____ the early bus. [安顺]

A. miss B. missed C. missing D. to miss

点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意："在上学的日子里，早上你什么时间起床？""我每天早上 7 点钟起床来避免错过早班车。" avoid doing sth. 意为"避免做某事"。

⑦ **judge** /dʒʌdʒ/ *v.* **审判，评判；断定；** *n.* **法官；裁判员；评判员**

judge by/from... 通过……判断

e.g. Don't judge a person by/from his/her appearance. 不要以貌取人。

Tomorrow they will be brought before a judge. 作名词
明天他们会被带到法官面前受审。

⑧ **rather than 而不是；（宁可……）也不愿**

rather than 连接主语时，谓语动词与 rather than 前的主语在人称和数上保持一致。

e.g. You rather than I are going to go camping. 是你而不是我要去野营。

I prefer to read books rather than swim. 我宁愿读书，也不愿游泳。

I would watch TV at home rather than go out.
我宁可在家看电视也不愿出去。

prefer to do... rather than do... 宁愿做……也不愿做

prefer doing to doing 比起做……更喜欢做……；
would do...rather than do.../would rather do...than do... 宁愿做……也不愿做……

考题在线 7 Nowadays, most people prefer to _____ computer games rather than _____ books. [绥化]

A. play; reading B. play; read C. playing; reading

点拨：句意：当今大部分人喜欢玩电脑游戏胜过读书。prefer to do…rather than do… 比起做……更喜欢做……。

考题在线 8 Mike _____ reading _____ playing computer games.

A. prefers; than B. prefers; to
C. would rather; than D. would rather; to

点拨：句意：比起玩电脑游戏，迈克更喜欢读书。prefer …to… "比起……，更喜欢……"，与动词连用时用动词 -ing 形式；would rather…than… "宁愿……而不愿……"，与动词连用时用不带 to 的不定式。

辨析：sleep, sleepy 与 asleep
- sleep v.& n. go to sleep 入睡
- sleepy adj. be sleepy 困乏的（表状态）
- asleep adj. 仅作表语 be asleep 睡着（表状态） fall asleep 入睡（表动作）

★**For example, your neighbours are playing loud music while you try to fall asleep.**

⑨ 【高频】**asleep** /əˈsliːp/ *adj.* **睡着的**

e.g. He is fast asleep. 他睡得很熟。

Don't make so much noise; our grandpa is sleeping.
不要制造这么多噪音，我们的爷爷正在睡觉。

Please go to bed if you feel sleepy. 如果你困了就上床睡觉吧。

The child is asleep. 那个孩子睡着了。

考题在线 9 Would you please turn down your MP3 a little? Your baby sister _____. [攀枝花改编]

A. is sleep B. is sleeping C. goes to sleep D. was sleepy

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

点拨：语境提示法。由语境 Would you please turn down your MP3 a little? 可推知“你小妹妹正在睡觉”，因此要用现在进行时。

★The first option is clearly better.

⑩ **option** /'ɒpʃn/ *n.* 选择 相当于 choice

e.g. Going to college is the only option for me.

上大学对我来说是唯一的选择。

I had no option but to ask him to leave. 我别无选择，只有请他离开。



有种脾气叫不放弃。

★After all, good neighbours are better than distant relatives.

⑪ **distant** /'dɪstənt/ *adj.* 远的；遥远的 distance n. 距离

e.g. It snows all the year round in that distant little village.

在那个遥远的小村落里整年下雪。

She is a distant cousin of mine. 她是我的远房表妹。

考题在线答案 1. how important it is to get along/on (well) with 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. B 9. B

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见178页)

一、用括号内所给词的适当形式填空

1. There is a place in my heart where all nations will live _____ (peace) some day. [扬州]

2. He left without _____ (say) a word.

3. How many _____ (option) do you have?

4. She had an _____ (argue) with her brother.

5. It's important for everyone to know how to ask for help _____ (polite). [云南]

二、单项选择

6. —What have you learnt after three years' study in China, Maria?

—I was taught _____ knowledge _____ good manners. [咸宁]

A. either; or B. not only; but also

C. neither; nor D. not; but

7. —I'm afraid the boy can't deal with the problem.

—Me, too. _____, he is only 8 years old.

A. In general B. So far

C. After all D. For example

8. We should _____ making a noise in the library. [天津]

A. avoid B. prefer C. practise D. enjoy

9. — Have you ever heard that China is building a nationwide 5G network?

—Right. 5G will allow us _____ English movies faster than ever. [咸宁]

A. download B. downloads

C. to download D. downloading

10. His uncle would rather _____ the old bike than _____ a new one.

A. repair; to buy B. to repair; buy

C. repair; buy D. to repair; to buy

三、连词成句

11. distant, lives in, village, he, a

_____.

12. excellent, the, judge, an, is, man

_____.

13. felt, result, she, the, about, upset

_____.

14. get along, you, well, them, can, with

_____?

15. with, relationships, I, good, people, have

_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 40 The UN—The Power of Words

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Words or war—which do you think is more powerful? 言语和战争，你认为哪个更有影响力?
- Do you know there is an international organization which tries to prevent war? What is its name? 你知道有一个尽力阻止战争的国际组织吗? 它的名字是什么?

课文朗读

In the early twentieth century, people suffered/ˈsʌfəd/ through ① many wars. When World War II was over, an organization called the United Nations (the UN) was formed to help countries talk about their problems instead of ② fighting. That was in 1945. 在 20 世纪初期，人们熬过了许多战争。在第二次世界大战结束时，一个名叫联合国的组织成立了，它是为了帮助国家之间通过对话而不是战争来讨论问题。那一年是 1945 年。

Today there are 193 member states in the UN. The headquarters/ˌhedˈkwɔːtəz/ of the UN is in New York City. The head of the UN, chosen by all the member states, is called the Secretary-General. The UN Security/sɪˈkjʊərətɪ/ Council has fifteen members, five of which ③ are permanent/ˈpɜːmənənt/ members—China, France, Russia, the U. K. and the U. S. 今天，联合国有 193 个成员国。联合国的总部在纽约市。联合国的领导人是由所有的成员国一起选出来的，被称为秘书长。联合国的安理会有 15 个成员国，其中五个是常任理事国——中国、法国、俄罗斯、英国和美国。

Many times since 1945, the UN has sent armies to keep peace between two fighting countries. It helps the situation/ˌsɪtʃʊˈeɪʃn/, but sometimes it is not successful. 自从 1945 年以来，有许多次，联合国派军到两个正在交战的国家以维护和平。这帮助缓和了形势，但有时并不成功。

It is not always easy for the members to reach an agreement. Just imagine ④ how difficult it is to satisfy/ˈsætɪsfaɪ/ ⑤ all 193 members! However ⑥, the UN is still the best way for the world to solve its problems. Let's hope that the great idea they had in 1945 to prevent war will last ⑦ forever/fərˈevə/. 成员之间达成一致也并不总是容易的。仅想象一下，要让所有 193 个成员国都满意是多么困难！然而，联合国仍然是全世界解决其问题的最好途径。让我们一起期望他们在 1945 年所拥有的阻止战争的伟大想法会持续到永远。

Words—even angry words—are always better than war! 言语——甚至是愤怒的言语——永远都比战争要好!

Dig In 拓展

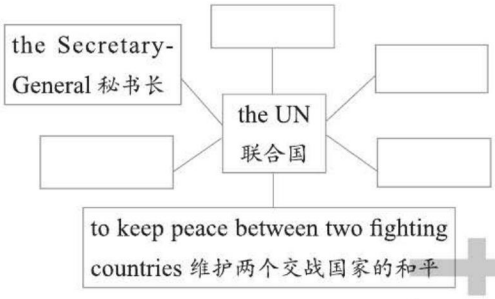
Besides the Security Council, there are other important parts of the UN. For example, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) is a specialized agency. One of its jobs is to protect important cultural sites. It has recognized many famous places in China. Can you name some of these places? 除了安理会，联合国还有其他重要的部门，例如，联合国教科文组织是一个专门的机构，它其中的一项工作就是保护重要的文化遗址。它已经认可了中国许多著名的地方。你能说出其中一些地方的名字吗?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 What do you know about the UN? Read the lesson and fill in the mind map.

关于联合国你知道什么？阅读课文并填写思维图。



2 Here is a speech that was given at a UN meeting. Read the speech and fill in the blanks with the words in the box.

这是在一次联合国会议上发表的一篇演讲。阅读这篇演讲并用方框中的单词填空。

situation 状况；形势　agreement 协议 satisfy 使满意　Secretary-General 秘书长

Mr. _____, my fellow delegates, ladies and gentlemen,

_____ 先生，各位代表们，女士们，先生们：

It is a great honour for me to stand here and speak to you all. We know this is no ordinary time for our people. Each of us comes here with our own problems. Sometimes we cannot reach an _____. Sometimes the _____ is very serious. And most of the time, we cannot _____ everyone. But it is not impossible! We should work together to make the world a better place to live. More peace, less war!

我很荣幸可以站在这里为大家演讲。我们知道，对于我们的人民来说，这是个非凡的时刻。我们每个人都带着自己的问题来到这里。有时候我们无法达成 _____ 。有时候 _____ 很严重。大多数时候，我们无法 _____ 每个人。但这并不是不可能！我们应该通力合作使世界成为一个更好的居住之地。多和平，少战争！

PROJECT 活动设计

A SPEECH ABOUT PREVENTING WAR

一篇关于阻止战争的演讲

We all love peace and hate war. War brings suffering to people. How can we put an end to war? Imagine you are representing China at the United Nations. Make a speech about how the United Nations should work to prevent war.

我们都喜爱和平，讨厌战争。战争给人们带来了苦难。我们如何才能结束战争呢？设想你是在联合国的中国代表，作一次关于联合国应该怎么工作去阻止战争的演讲。

Present your speech to a small group of classmates and listen to their speeches. Talk about your speeches in groups. Ask each other questions about your opinions and other information you learned.

把你的演讲展示给小组同学们，并听一听他们的演讲。分小组来讨论你们的演讲。相互就你们的观点及其他你们所了解的信息进行提问。

No pain, no gain.
没有付出就没有收获



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·考点批注　·考点应用

★**In the early twentieth century, people suffered through many wars.**

与 suffer 相关的短语：
① suffer from 患……病；受……折磨
② suffer for 因……而受到惩罚

① **suffer through 熬过；挨过**

e.g. We suffered through a crisis.
我们熬过一场危机。

You must have suffered from a cold.
你一定是感冒了。

You will suffer for your foolishness some day.
总有一天，你会因你的愚蠢而受到惩罚。

辨析：instead of 与 instead
- instead of 是介词短语，意为“代替，作为……的替换”，后接名词、代词或动名词等。
- instead 是副词，意为“代替，反而”，修饰整个句子，可位于句首或句末。

★**...was formed to help countries talk about their problems instead of fighting.**

② **instead of 代替；而不是**

e.g. It's I that should ask you instead of you asking me.
应该是我问你，而不是你问我。

We just had soup instead of a full meal.
我们没有吃全餐，只喝了汤。

We didn't go to the park. Instead, we went to the museum.
我们没去公园，而是去了博物馆。

知识微课

介词 of 与关系代词 which 搭配，而且介词 of 之前出现数词时，可表示整体与部分的关系，即用于“部分 + of + 整体 (which, whom)”结构，此结构多用于非限制性定语从句。

★**The UN Security Council has fifteen members, five of which are permanent members—China, France, Russia, the U. K. and the U. S.**

③ **【难点】数词 + of which ……中的……**

e.g. I have five books, two of which are English books.
我有五本书，其中两本是英语书。
（先行词；非限制性定语从句）

Ten students were killed in the accident, eight of whom were girls.
十名学生死于这场事故，其中八名是女生。

★**Just imagine how difficult it is to satisfy all 193 members!**

④ **imagine** /ɪ'mædʒɪn/ *v.* **想象，设想**

e.g. Can you imagine life without electricity?
你能想象没有电的生活吗？（后接名词）

We imagine living a thousand years ago.
我们想象生活在 1 000 年前。（后接动名词）

Can you imagine who is knocking at our door outside?
你能想到是谁在外面敲门吗？（后接从句）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 The Internet is so closely connected with our daily life. Can you _____ a life without it? [河南]

A. understand B. imagine C. consider D. expect

点拨：understand 理解；imagine 想象；consider 考虑；expect 期望。由前句“互联网与我们的日常生活联系很紧密”推知后句意为“你能想象没有它（互联网）的生活吗？”。



⑤【重点】**satisfy** /'sætɪsfaɪ/ *v.* make sb. pleased 使满意，使满足

satisfy 的用法：satisfy + n./pron. 使……满意

e.g. Some people are very hard to satisfy. 有些人很难使其满意。

The result of the test satisfied the teachers. 测试结果使老师们很满意。

I'm not satisfied with your work. You must improve it.

我对你的工作不满意，你必须加以改进。

satisfied 为其形容词形式，常用短语：be satisfied with sb./sth. 对某人/某事感到满意

考题在线 2 If you don't have a deep love for something, don't be _____ (satisfy) until you find one. [无锡]

★**However, the UN is still the best way for the world to solve its problems.**

⑥ **however** /haʊ'evə/ *adv.* 然而；不过（表示转折）

e.g. However, you may set off a little earlier.

然而，你们可以早一点动身。

This book is expensive; however, it's useful.

这本书很贵，然而，它很有用。

【易错】辨析：however 与 but

① however 副词，可位于句首、句中或句末，必须用逗号与句子分开。

He often eats only a little, but he doesn't feel hungry.

他经常吃得很少却不感到饿。

② but 连词，位于句首或句中，后面连接一个句子时无需用逗号。

考题在线 3 I think you should complain; _____, you are happy with the situation.

A. but B. however C. until D. though

点拨：句意：我认为你应该抱怨，但是你对情况是满意的。结合语境可知，前后两个句子在语气上有转折关系。根据选项，but 和 however 均表示转折关系，however 与后面的句子由逗号隔开，独立使用；but 直接连接后一分句。

★**Let's hope that the great idea they had in 1945 to prevent war will last forever.**

⑦【重点】**last** /lɑ:st/ *v.* 持续（在不同的场合可以译成不同的汉语意思）

e.g. The meeting lasted for two hours. 会议开了两个小时。 → 持续

The film will last for more than three hours. 电影将会上映三个多小时。

My home is the last house on the right. 右排最后的一座房子是我家。 → adj. 最后的，最近的

He came last in the race. 这次赛跑他得了最后一名。 → adv. 最后

考题在线答案 1. B 2. satisfied 3. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见179页)

一、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. We are sorry to hear that you are not _____ (satisfy) with your new car. [扬州]

2. He laughed at us instead of _____ (lend) a hand.

3. We all hope the peace will _____ (last) forever.

4. The head of the UN _____ (choose) by all the member states.

5. In the early _____ (twenty) century, he went abroad.

二、用方框中所给单词或短语的适当形式填空

instead of, be satisfied with, suffer from, in a dangerous situation, however

6. Do you often _____ headaches?

7. I give him some advice _____ money.

8. He tried his best to solve the problem; _____, it was difficult.

9. They seemed to _____ our work.

10. Not everyone can keep calm _____.

三、单项选择

11. Chinese people suffered _____ many wars in the early twentieth century.

A. through B. in

C. with D. for

12. —Did you walk to school this morning?

—No, we went by bus _____.

A. instead of feet

B. instead walking

C. instead of on foot

D. instead of foot

13. _____ is unhealthy for us to go to school without eating breakfast in the morning. [湘潭]

A. That B. This C. It

14. It's an honour for me _____ here to speak to you.

A. to invite

B. to be invited

C. being invited

D. to being invited

15. He wrote a lot of novels, most of _____ were popular.

A. them B. whom

C. that D. which

基础知识德育



There is no royal road to learning.
学习没有捷径。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 41 Jenny's Good Advice

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What do you do when your friends misunderstand you? 当朋友误解你时，你会做什么?
- When you get into a fight with a friend, which of you usually says sorry first?
  如果你和朋友打架了，你们两个谁通常先说对不起?

课文朗读

Danny and Steven haven't talked to each other for a few days. Will they ever be friends again? 丹尼和斯蒂芬已经好几天不和彼此说话了。他们会再次成为朋友吗?

Jenny: I'm glad you agreed to come to my house. Would either ① of you like a cookie? 我很高兴你们同意来我家。你们中有人想吃饼干吗?

Steven: Yes, please! You make great cookies, Jenny. 是的，想吃！你做的饼干很棒，詹妮。

Danny: I agree. 我同意。

Jenny: Thank you. I'm glad you can agree on something. 谢谢你们，我很高兴在某件事上你们能够取得一致意见。

Danny and Steven eat their cookies in silence /'saɪləns/. They won't look at each other, and neither of them wants to talk.
丹尼和斯蒂芬静静地吃着他们的饼干。他们不看彼此，两个人都不想说话。

Jenny: Now, do you two want to keep silent /'saɪlənt/ ② forever? Do you really want to stop ③ being friends? 喂，你们两个想永远保持沉默吗? 你们真的不想做朋友了吗?

Steven: (He looks down at the floor.) When everyone agrees on a time. it shouldn't be changed. (他低头看着地板。) 既然大家一致同意了一个时间，时间就不应该被改变了。

Jenny: What do you have to say about that, Danny? 丹尼，对那件事你得说些什么?

Danny: Some of our teammates had to go to the Old Age Home and help the elders/'eldəz/ that morning. Everyone else ④ agreed on the new time. I tried to let Steven know. 那天早晨，我们一些队友必须去老年之家帮助老年人。其他人一致同意那个新时间。我尽力让斯蒂芬知道。

Steven: But I didn't see the message!
但是我没有看到信息!

Jenny: Steven, I think Danny really tried to reach you. 斯蒂芬，我觉得丹尼真的尽力联系你了。

Danny: (Danny looks at Steven.) Well, next time, I guess I will go to you directly/dɪ'rektlɪ/. I'm sorry you missed the game. (丹尼看着斯蒂芬。) 好吧，下次，我想我会直接去找你。对不起，让你错过了比赛。

Steven: Well, I didn't check my messages carefully. And I am sorry I hit you with the basketball. I didn't mean to ⑤ do it, Danny.
嗯，我没有仔细地检查信息。我用篮球击中了你，对不起。丹尼，我并不是有意这样做的。

(Slowly, a smile comes across Danny's face. Then they both begin to laugh. 慢慢地，丹尼的脸上露出了笑容。然后他们俩都开始笑起来。)

Jenny: It's good to see you are friends again. After all ⑥, it's just a game! 很高兴看到你们再次是朋友了。毕竟，那只是一场比赛!

Danny: And it's only my head!
并且，那只是我的头!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Listen to the dialogue and answer the questions.

听对话并回答问题。



1. Is Danny free on Saturday afternoon?
   周六下午丹尼有空吗?
2. Who else does Jenny invite?
   詹妮还邀请了谁?
3. Why does Jenny invite them?
   詹妮为什么邀请他们?

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the phrases in the box.

用方框中短语的正确形式填空。

mean to 打算　agree on 就……取得一致意见 keep silent 保持沉默　after all 毕竟

Danny and Steven didn't talk to each other for a few days. That Saturday, they both went to Jenny's house, but they all _____ at first. Jenny encouraged them to talk about the problem. Steven complained that Danny shouldn't change the time they _____.Danny explained the situation. He felt sorry that Steven missed the game. Steven said sorry to Danny because his basketball hit Danny on the head. But he didn't _____ do it. It was an accident. The two boys became friends again. _____, friends are more important than a game.

丹尼和斯蒂芬彼此好几天不说话了。那个星期六,他们都去了詹妮家,但起初他们都 _____。詹妮鼓励他们谈谈(他们的)问题。斯蒂芬抱怨丹尼不应该改变他们 _____时间。丹尼解释了(发生的)情况。对于斯蒂芬错过比赛,他感到很抱歉。斯蒂芬向丹尼道歉,因为他的篮球击中了丹尼的头。但他并不 _____这样做。那是一次意外。这两个男孩又成了朋友。_____,朋友比比赛更重要。

3 Work in groups of three. Pretend there is a dispute between two friends. Can you think of something to say to keep them from fighting? 三人一组合作。假装两个朋友之间有了争吵,你能想出一些要说的话来阻止他们争吵吗?

Dispute: Ben and Tim planned to go to the movie theatre together this Saturday. Tim arrived at the theatre on time, but Ben didn't show up the whole evening. Ben thought their plan was for Sunday. Now, Tim is upset and he hasn't spoken to Ben for a week. 争端:本和蒂姆计划这个周六一起去电影院,蒂姆准时到了电影院,但是本整个晚上都没有出现。本以为他们的计划在周日。现在,蒂姆很生气,他已经一周没和本说话了。

Your advice: 你的建议:

_____

_____

_____

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★Would either of you like a cookie?

① 【重点】**either** /'aɪðə(r)/ *pron.*(两者中的)任何一个

e.g. —Do you want tea or coffee?
你要茶还是咖啡?
— Either is OK. 哪一种都行。
Either of the answers is right. 两个答案都对。

either 作代词,作主语时,谓语动词常用单三形式。

敲黑板 高频考点,either of…作主语,谓语动词一定是单数哟!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

There are many trees on either side of the street. 街道两侧有许多树。

If you don't go, I won't go, either. 如果你不去，我也不去。

Either you or he is right. 或者你对，或者他对。

either 作限定词，“（两者之中）任何一个”，修饰单数名词。

either 作副词，常用于否定句后，表示“也”。

either...or... 连接两个并列主语时，谓语动词遵循就近一致原则。

考题在线 1 —When are we going to see the movie *Zootopia*, this afternoon or tonight?

—_____ is OK. I'm free today. [宜昌]

A. Either B. Neither

C. Both D. All

点拨：正确把握语境法。句意：——我们什么时候去看电影《疯狂动物城》，今天下午还是今天晚上？——_____ 都可以，我今天有时间。由 is 可排除 C 和 D；由答语中的 I'm free today 可推知两者任一都可以。

考题在线 2 Either the students or the teacher _____ him very well. [天水改编]

A. knows B. to know C. know D. have known

点拨：考查主谓一致。句意：学生或老师都很了解他。分析句子结构可知此句缺少谓语动词，either…or… 连接两个主语时谓语动词遵循“就近原则”，the teacher 是单数，谓语用三单形式。

有关 silent 的短语：
- be silent about / on... 对……未谈及
- fall silent 沉默下来
- keep silent 保持沉默

★**Now, do you two want to keep silent forever?**

② **silent** /'saɪlənt/ *adj.* **沉默的；寂静的**

e.g. He is silent about his personal problem. 他对个人问题避而不谈。

silent 的名词为 silence，常见的一些短语：in silence 安静地，无声地；keep silence 保持沉默；break silence 打破沉默

e.g. They finished their meal in silence. 他们默不作声地吃完了饭。

★**Do you really want to stop being friends?**

③ **stop doing sth. 停止做某事**

辨析：stop doing sth.，stop to do sth. 与 stop... from doing sth.

e.g. All the students stopped talking when the teacher came in.
当老师进来时，所有的学生都停止了讲话。

Stop talking, please. Let's sing an English song.
请不要说话了，让我们唱首英文歌曲吧。

① stop doing sth. 意为“停止正在做的事情”，stop 是及物动词，后面的 doing sth. 是宾语。

We are tired. Let's stop to have a rest.
我们累了，让我们停下来歇会儿吧。

② stop to do sth. 意为“停下正在做的事情去做另一件事”，stop 是不及物动词，后面的动词不定式 to do sth. 是目的状语。

The heavy rain stopped us from going out.
大雨阻止了我们外出。

stop...from doing sth.，意为“阻止……做某事”。

考题在线 3 Sometimes you have to stop _____ too much and just go where your heart takes you. [湘潭]

A. think B. to think C. thinking

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

速记小筏：后跟动词-ing形式的常用动词：建议继续勤操练（suggest，go on，practice）喜欢考虑谨避免（enjoy，consider，avoid）想象完成莫推延（imagine，finish，delay，put off）停止放弃太冒险（stop，give up，risk）

点拨：考查非谓语动词的用法。句意：有时候你不要想太多，一切随心就好。句式 stop doing sth. 意为“停止做某事”，而 stop to do sth. 意为“停下来做另一件事”。

★Everyone else agreed on the new time.

④ **else** /els/ *adj.* **其他的**

e.g. You are talking. Who else is talking?

你在说话。还有谁在说话？

Is anyone else coming to the party?

还有其他人来参加这个派对吗？

What other things would you like?

你想要别的什么东西？

辨析：else 与 other

① else 修饰复合不定代词和疑问词，要后置。

② other 修饰名词，放在名词之前。

★I didn't mean to do it, Danny.

⑤ **mean to do sth.** **打算做某事；有意做某事**

e.g. I mean to stay here for another two days.

我打算在这儿再呆两天。

Helping others means helping yourself.

帮助他人意味着帮助你自己。

John really upset Granny but I'm sure he did not mean to.

约翰真是让奶奶心烦，不过我相信他是无意的。

don't mean to do sth. 是其否定式，表示“无意做某事”。

I mean you to work as our spokesman.

我打算让你当我们的代言人。

mean sb. to do sth. 打算让某人做某事。

辨析：mean to do sth. 与 mean doing sth.

mean doing sth. 意味着做某事，其主语通常是指事物的词。

mean to do sth. 打算或有意做某事，其主语通常是表示人的名词或代词。

考题在线 4 It was a little cold and I didn't mean _____ shorts, but I had to wear them to run in a race.

A. to wear　　B. wearing

C. worn　　D. wears

★After all, it's just a game!

⑥ **after all** **毕竟，终究，到底**　一般置于句首或句尾作状语。

e.g. They finished the work after all.

他们到底是完成了工作。



考题在线 5 Except for working hard, we should give more attention to proper exercise and enough sleep. _____, health always comes first.　[山西]

A. For example　　B. After all　　C. So far

点拨：句意：除了努力工作以外，我们应该更加关注适当的锻炼和足够的睡眠。毕竟，健康总是第一位的。for example 例如；after all 毕竟；so far 到目前为止。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. A　3. C　4. A　5. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见179页)

一、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. The loud sound broke the _____ (silent) of the night.

2. I have finished my homework, Mom. May I stop _____ (have) a rest?

3. Either Tom or she _____ (be) going to the party next week. One of them must stay at home.

4. I tried _____ (get) in touch with him, but I failed.

5. Missing this train means _____ (wait) for another hour.

二、单项选择

6. There are two roads, and either _____ to the station.

A. led
B. are leading
C. lead
D. leads

7. —Do you have any difficulty in _____ English?
—Yes, but I try _____ myself understood.

A. to speak; make
B. speaking; make
C. to speak; to make
D. speaking; to make

8. When I asked her where she put the dictionary, she kept _____.

A. calm　　B. quiet
C. still　　D. silent

9. Pay attention to the problem. _____, it has something to do with our everyday life.

A. After all　　B. After that
C. What's more　　D. What's worse

10. —Why doesn't the surgeon stop _____ lunch?
—Because he is too busy _____ a dying patient in the operation room. [常州]

A. to have; to save　　B. having; to save
C. to have; saving　　D. having; saving

三、连词成句

11. the, have, time, on, we, agreed
_____.

12. in, sat, here, for, silence, a, time, he, long
_____.

13. of, wants, neither, talk, them, to
_____.

14. want, forever, they, silent, to, keep
_____.

15. else, on, the, everyone, time, agreed, new
_____.



One today is worth two tomorrows.
一个今天胜似两个明天。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 42 Peace at Last

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What is the meaning of "peacemaker"? "调解人"的意思是什么?
- Do you know any sayings about friendship? What are they?
  你知道一些关于友谊的谚语吗? 它们是什么?

Dear Li Ming, 亲爱的李明:

课文朗读

Did you ever have a fight with a good friend? It is a really bad feeling if friends don't talk to each other for a couple of ① days. That's how I felt last week.

你曾经和好朋友吵过架吗? 如果朋友之间好几天不说话，感觉真的很糟糕，那就是我上周的感觉。

You see, I had a big fight with Steven. He and I play on the same basketball team. Our last game was moved to an earlier time, but Steven didn't get my message, so of course he missed the game. He was angry ②. He threw his basketball, and it hit me. Steven and I were ready to beat each other!

你知道，我和斯蒂芬大吵了一架。我和他在同一个篮球队打球，我们上一场比赛的时间提前了，但斯蒂芬没收到我的信息，所以，当然，他错过了比赛。他很生气，他把篮球扔出去，球打中了我，我和斯蒂芬就快打起来了!

Thanks to ③ Jenny, everything is OK now. We held a meeting yesterday. We had a good talk and solved our problems. We said sorry to each other.

多亏詹妮，现在一切都好了，昨天我们开了个会。我们好好谈了谈，解决了我们的问题。我们相互道歉了。

I'm happy we are friends again. Friendship is important, and we should not fight over such a small matter.

我很高兴我们又成了朋友，友谊很重要，我们不应该因为这样的小事而争吵。

I have to go now—Steven is knocking at my door. Talk to you soon.

我现在要走了——斯蒂芬正在敲我的门。稍后和你聊。

Danny 丹尼

Dear Danny, 亲爱的丹尼:

I am happy that you and Steven are friends again. Remember the old saying: A good friendship makes life happier!

我很高兴你和斯蒂芬再次成为朋友，记住这句古谚语：美好的友谊让生活更快乐!

I have had similar experiences. Sometimes friends don't agree with each other. But if we can sit down and talk about the problems together, many of them can be solved. We all want peace rather/'rɑːðə/ than fighting.

我有过相似的经历。有时候，朋友间不同意彼此的观点，但是如果我们可以坐下来一起谈论这些问题，它们中的许多是可以解决的。我们都想要和平而非争吵。

Jenny is a good peacemaker/'piːsˌmeɪkə/. We need more peacemakers in the world.

詹妮是一个很棒的调解员，在这个世界上我们需要更多的调解员。

Li Ming 李明

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文并判断正 (T) 或误 (F)。

1. Danny was feeling bad last week.
丹尼上周感觉很糟糕。 (　　)
2. Li Ming had a fight with Steven.
李明和斯蒂芬吵了一架。 (　　)
3. Many problems can be solved if friends talk about them. 如果朋友们谈一谈，许多问题都可以解决。 (　　)

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the phrases in the box.
用方框中短语的正确形式填空。

hold a meeting 会面；开会　thanks to 由于；多亏 rather than 而不是　knock at 敲

1. _____ the kind-hearted couple, the homeless boy has a new family.
_____ 这对好心的夫妇，这个无家可归的男孩有了一个新家。
2. Tom! Go and see who is _____ the door.
汤姆！去看看谁在 _____ 门。
3. We _____ to answer all questions yesterday.
昨天我们 _____ 回答所有的问题。
4. I would like to ride a bicycle _____ drive a car.
我想骑自行车 _____ 开车。

3 Choose the correct answers. 选择正确答案。

Group A:

1. When two dogs _____ a bone, a third one takes the bone and carries it away.
当两只狗 _____ 一块骨头时，第三只狗把骨头叼走了。
2. All countries should work together to _____ global warming.
所有国家应该一起努力 _____ 全球变暖。
3. I don't want to _____ my cousin because she's my best friend.
我不想和我表妹 _____，因为她是我最好的朋友。

A. fight with 与……打架
B. fight against 与……作战
C. fight over 因……而争论

Group B:

1. This is the time we all _____. You cannot change it.
这是我们都 _____ 的时间。你不能改变它。
2. I usually _____ you, but this time I disagree.
我通常 _____ 你，但这次我不同意。
3. We all _____ help her, but we don't know what to do.
我们都 _____ 帮助她，但是我们不知道做什么。

A. agree with 同意
B. agree to 同意
C. agree on 就……取得一致意见

4 Read the following proverbs about friendship. Translate them into Chinese and discuss some of them with your friends.
阅读下面关于友谊的谚语，把它们翻译成汉语并和你的朋友讨论它们中的一些。

A friend in need is a friend indeed.
患难见真情。

A good friend is like a mirror.
好朋友就像一面镜子。

Tell me about your friends, and I'll tell you who you are.
一个人的朋友是哪些人，决定了他自己是怎样的人。

A true friend reaches for your hand and touches your heart.
真正的朋友是会向你伸出援手，触动你心灵的人。

The friends of our friends are our friends.
朋友的朋友也是我们的朋友。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·考点批注 ·考点应用

It is a really bad feeling if friends don't talk to each other for a couple of days.

一般强调的数量是2或者3。couple本身的数量含义就是两个，如the couple意思是"那对夫妇"。

① **a couple of 几个**

e.g. We met in Moscow a couple of weeks ago.
几周前我们在莫斯科见了一面。

a couple of + 复数名词，相当于a few + 复数名词，在句中作主语时谓语动词常用复数形式。

A couple of men are playing cards in the hall. 几个男人在大厅里打牌。

There are a couple of women dancing on the square.
有几个妇女在广场上跳舞。

考题在线1 There are a _____ of boys waiting for you.

A. few B. couple C. little D. piece

点拨：考查固定结构。a couple of此处意为"几个"，相当于a few。

He was angry.

② 【重点】 **angry** /'æŋgri/ *adj.* 生气的；愤怒的

e.g. He is very angry to find that nothing has been done.
他发现什么都没做，很生气。

angry常构成的结构：
①be angry with sb. 生某人的气
②be angry at/about sth./doing sth. 因（做）某事生气
③be angry with sb. for sth./doing sth. 因某人（做）某事而生气

He was angry with his wife. 他生他妻子的气。

She was angry about/at missing the first bus yesterday.
她昨天因错过头班公共汽车而生气。

I'm angry with you for your conduct.
因为你的行为，我生你的气。

angry的副词是angrily。

She left the room angrily. 她生气地离开了房间。

考题在线2 Li Lei's mother _____ him because he went out to play in the rain. [海南]

A. was angry with B. was pleased with C. was proud of

点拨：由because引导的原因状语从句"因为他雨天出去玩了"，可判断妈妈生气。be angry with"生某人的气"；be pleased with"为某人感到高兴"；be proud of"为某人感到骄傲"。

Thanks to Jenny, everything is OK now.

辨析：thanks to 与 thanks for

③ **thanks to 多亏；由于**

e.g. Thanks to (Because of) the teacher's help, the problem has been solved.
多亏老师的帮助，问题已经解决了。

①thanks to 多亏，由于强调感谢的对象。

thanks to后接名词、代词或动名词，相当于because of。

thanks不可以改为thank you，to为介词，后不接动词原形。

Thanks to the English language, we can learn a lot from other countries.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

多亏英语这门语言，我们能从其他国家学到很多东西。

Thanks for inviting us to your birthday party.

谢谢你邀请我们参加你的生日聚会。

② thanks for 因……而感谢强调感谢的原因。

thanks 相当于 thank you，for 后可接名词或动名词。

考题在线 3 Lingling has made great progress in English, _____ (多亏) to Lucy's help. [广安]

点拨：句意：多亏了露西的帮忙，玲玲已经在英语方面取得了很大的进步。

考查固定短语“多亏了某人的帮助”，应用 thanks to one's help。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. A 3. thanks

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见180页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. A couple of people _____ (plant) trees on the hill now.
2. Thank you for _____ (look) after us so well.
3. It was dark everywhere, so the king shouted at him _____ (angry). [广安]
4. She would rather _____ (not work) here than make her father angry.
5. I prefer to listen to music rather than _____ (go) out.

二、单项选择

6. _____ the government's efforts, our life is becoming better and better.
   A. Instead of　　B. Thanks to
   C. Thanks for　　D. In order to
7. They were ready _____ each other when the teacher came in.
   A. hitting　　B. hit
   C. to hit　　D. to hitting
8. Today's homework is so difficult that I still need _____ minutes.
   A. a bit　　B. a couple of
   C. few　　D. a bit of
9. I prefer _____ at home rather than _____ to the cinema.
   A. to stay; to go
   B. stay; go
   C. to stay; go
   D. stay; to go
10. "Who makes you so _____?" his mother asked him _____.
    A. angry; angrily
    B. angry; angry
    C. angrily; angrily
    D. angrily; angry

三、连词成句

11. is, father, on, the, his, *People's Daily*, now
    _____.
12. you, angry, me, are, with
    _____?
13. other, we, ready, beat, were, to, each
    _____.
14. friendship, happier, a, life, good, makes
    _____.
15. peace, than, we, want, fighting, all, rather
    _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary 构建你的词汇库

I. Complete the sentences with the correct words. The first letter is given.

用正确的单词完成句子。首字母已给出。

1. Look out for spelling mistakes when you c_____ your homework.
   当你_____你的作业时，留意拼写错误。
2. A s_____ is a kind of animal that has no legs to move. _____是一种没有腿来移动的动物。
3. With a lot of practice, we finally b_____ that strong team.
   经过大量练习，我们最终_____那个实力很强的队。
4. The children were s_____ into groups for the game. 孩子们被_____成小组来做游戏。
5. When you leave the house, make sure to l_____ the door. 当你离开家时，确保_____门。

II. Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the phrases in the box. 用方框中词组的正确形式填空。

out of service 不在服务区	provide...for 为……提供……
in silence 沉默地	prepare for 为……做准备
reach an agreement 达成一致	

1. Yesterday I called you, but your phone was _____. 昨天我给你打电话，但是你的电话 _____。
2. The final examination is coming. All the students are busy _____ it.
   马上要期末考试了，所有的学生都忙着_____。
3. It's very kind of him to _____ food _____ the poor.
   他很好心，_____穷人_____食物。
4. After a long discussion, we finally _____. 经过长时间的讨论，我们最终_____。
5. She sat alone _____ for a long time. 她_____独自坐了很长时间。

Grammar in Use 语法应用

Join the clauses using "and", "but", "or" or "so". 用"and"、"but"、"or"或"so"连接分句。

He can understand French, 他懂法语，	and 并；和	will you just watch? 你只是看一看吗？
I fell off my bike 我从自行车上摔下来	but 但是	she stayed in bed. 她呆在床上。
I know her face, 我熟悉她的面容，	or 否则；或者	we will be late for school. 我们上学会迟到。
Hurry up, 快点儿，	so 因此；所以	nobody likes to talk with him. 没有人喜欢和他谈话。
Do you want to play the game 你想玩这个游戏		I can't remember her name. 我记不起她的名字。
That man never tells the truth, 那个男人从不说实话，		he can't speak it. 他不会说。
June had a bad headache, 琼头很痛，		hurt my knees. 伤了我的膝盖。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Listening and Speaking 听和说

Listen to the dialogue and complete it. Then act it out. 听对话并完成它。然后把它表演出来。



A: Hi! I'm a journalist from *China Daily*. Can I interview your band? 你好！我是《中国日报》的新闻记者。我可以采访你们乐队吗?

B: No problem. 没问题。

A: Your band has wonderful musicians. _____ 你们乐队有很棒的音乐家。_____

B: Not always.Sometimes we have different ideas. 不总是。有时候我们有不同的想法。

A: _____

B: We sit and talk. 我们坐下来谈一谈。

A: _____

B: Yes.Sometimes we argue with each other. Once, I didn't talk to Sam for three days after a fight. When we cooled down, we discussed the problem. 是的，有时候我们彼此会争吵。有一次我和萨姆吵架后，三天没和萨姆说话。当冷静下来时，我们才讨论问题。

A: _____

A. Discussion is always a good way to solve disagreements. 讨论总是解决分歧的好方式。

B. How do you solve those problems? 你们如何解决那些问题?

C. Do you always agree with each other? 你们总是同意彼此的意见吗?

D. Do you sometimes argue? 你们有时会争吵吗?

Putting It All Together 综合练习

Read the passage and answer the questions. 阅读短文并回答问题。

Get Together and Talk Things Over!

聚在一起协商!

Sometimes even best friends have fights.They disagree with each other and begin to argue. Sometimes they even stop talking to each other. If they are really good friends, though, they will try to fix things up.There are usually two sides to every story, so it is helpful if you can get someone else to listen to both sides. 有时候，甚至是最好的朋友也吵架，他们不赞同彼此的意见并开始争论。有时，他们甚至相互不说话。虽然这样，如果他们是真正的好朋友，他们会尽力和解。通常每件事情都有两面性，因此如果你能找别人听一下双方的情况是有帮助的。

Maybe you have a good friend who knows both of you. You can ask him or her to have a meeting with you and listen to what each of you has to say. The main thing is for the two of you to get together and talk things over. 可能你们有一个认识你们两个的好朋友。你可以请他或她来和你们开个会，来听听你们每个人有什么要说的。主要的事是你们俩聚在一起，把事情好好商量一下。

When you get together, try not to be angry. Listen to what your friend has to say. Then tell your point of view. You might be surprised. Sometimes all it takes is talking together to work things out. After all, a disagreement is just that. You might even forget the whole thing. You might even make friends with your old friend all over again! 当你们聚在一起时，尽量别生气，听听你的朋友所说的话。然后说说你的看法。你可能会惊讶。有时，所要做的就是在一起谈一谈，把事情解决。毕竟，分歧就是那样的。你甚至可能忘掉整个事情，你甚至可能再和你的老朋友交朋友!

1. Why do best friends have fights and begin to argue? 为什么最要好的朋友会争论并且开始争吵?
2. Who should you find to listen to both sides? 你应找谁来倾听双方的不同意见?
3. What are some key things to keep in mind when you get together to talk things over? 当你们聚在一起协商时，要记住的一些关键的事情是什么?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Self-Evaluation 自我评价

Find more examples from the unit. Then mark your stars.

从本单元找出更多例子，然后标出自己的星级。

Ⅰ. Talking about Disputes and Settlements

谈论争吵和解决方法

We are all friends, so we try hard to understand each other.

我们都是朋友，所以我们尽力理解彼此。

I can talk about disputes and settlements in English. 我可以用英语谈论争吵和解决方法。

Ⅱ. Conjunctions: and, but, or, so

连词：and，but，or，so

I'm in Grade 9 this year, and I'm president of the student council at my school.

今年我上九年级，而且我是学校的学生会主席。

I can use "and", "but", "or" and "so" properly.

我可以恰当使用"and"、"but"、"or"和"so"。

Please Let There Be Peace

请让那里拥有和平

The army gathered—they prepared to fight.

军队集合了——他们准备去战斗。

Out of war, please let there come peace.

走出战争，请让那里回到和平。

They held their guns, smoke hid the light.

他们握着枪，烟雾隐藏了光明。

Out of war, please let there come peace.

走出战争，请让那里回到和平。

The soldiers stood beside each other.

战士们一个挨着一个站着。

They must obey, do as they're told.

他们必须服从，照所说的去做。

Battle rages—no heroes.

战斗激烈地进行——没有英雄。

Out of war, please let there come peace.

走出战争，请让那里回到和平。

The leaders hold so many meetings.

首领们开了很多会议。

After war, please let there be peace.

战争之后，请让那里拥有和平。

We hope they agree to do something.

我们希望他们同意去做些事情。

After war, please let there be peace.

战争之后，请让那里拥有和平。

They talk together, then make a speech.

他们一起谈论，然后发表演讲。

The war must end, they all agree.

战争必须结束，他们都赞成。

Put the guns down—no heroes.

把枪放下吧——不要英雄。

After war, please let there be peace.

战争之后，请让那里拥有和平。

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

并列连词

考点1 and 的用法

考向一：and可以连接语法作用相同的词、短语或句子，表示并列或对称的关系，意为"和、并且"等。

e.g. Tom and Mary go to the park every week.

汤姆和玛丽每周都去公园。

考向二：【易错】并列连词 and 的其他含义。

①表示动作或事情发生的先后关系，意为"然后，随即"。

e.g. She came in and sat down.

她进来，然后坐了下来。

②表示补充说明，意为"而且"。

e.g. They have to make some decisions, and be soon.

他们必须作出一些决定，而且要及早作出。

③ and 常用在 come，go，try 等动词后连接另一

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

个动词，表示目的，意为“为了”。

e.g. Come and meet this family!

来见见这家人吧！

④表示顺承的结果，意为“便；于是”等。

e.g. She could not find her mother and began to cry. 她找不到妈妈，于是开始哭了起来。

考题在线 1 The film seems interesting _____ we all want to see it. [江西]

A. and　　B. but　　C. unless　　D. if

点拨：考查连词用法辨析。and 和，并且，表示并列关系，but 但是，表示转折关系，unless 如果不，引导条件状语从句，if 如果，引导条件状语从句。这里表示并列关系。

考点 2 but 的用法

考向一：【重点】but 连接的两个成分可以表示转折或对比的关系，意为“但是；可是”。

e.g. He is young but very experienced.

他虽然年轻，但很有经验。

考题在线 2 This cap is nice, _____ it doesn't look good on me. [北京]

A. for　　B. so

C. but　　D. or

点拨：考查连词。“这顶帽子很好”与“我戴着不好看”两句间应是转折关系，要用 but“但是”连接。

考向二：not... but... 不是……而是……。

e.g. What I want is not this one, but that one.

我想要的不是这个，而是那个。

考点 3 or 的用法

考向一：连词 or 意为“或者”，表示选择关系。

e.g. Do you often go to school on foot or by bike?

你经常步行去上学还是骑自行车去上学？

考向二：【重点】“祈使句 + or + 陈述句”句型中，or 意为“否则”，祈使句相当于一个条件句，可以和 if 引导的条件状语从句进行转换。

e.g. Work hard at school, or you will fail in the exam. 在学校努力学习，否则你会考试不及格。

考题在线 3 Emily, you're playing video games again! Study hard, _____ you will fail in the coming exam. [滨州]

A. then　　B. so　　C. and　　D. or

点拨：then 然后；so 因此；and 和，并且；or 或者，否则。由句意“艾米莉，你又在玩电子游戏！努力学习吧，否则你会在即将来临的考试中不及格的。”可知，表示“否则”的 or 符合句意。

考向三：在否定句中连接并列成分时，用 or，而不用 and。

e.g. I can't speak English or French.

我不会讲英语和法语。

考点 4 连词 so 的用法

考向一：so 用作连词，主要用于表结果，意为“所以”。

e.g. It was dark, so I couldn't see what was happening.

天很黑，所以我看不见正在发生什么事。

考题在线 4 You can't decide whether or not you like something until you try it. _____ it's important to try something new. [山西]

A. But　　B. Or　　C. So

点拨：考查连词词义辨析。句意：你尝试了某样东西你才能决定是否喜欢它。所以尝试新的事物是很重要的。由前后句的因果关系，可排除 A、B。

考向二：so 有时可与并列连词 and 连用，构成 and so，相当于 so。

e.g. He worked hard and so he succeeded.

他工作努力，所以成功了。

考向三：because 和 so 不能同时用于一个句子中。

e.g. He was ill, so he didn't go to school. =He didn't go to school because he was ill. 因为他病了，所以没去上学。

速记小筏：and 顺承和肯并；选择、否并、否则 or；but 用来表转折；so 是因此表结果。（肯并表肯定句中的并列成分用 and 连接；否并表否定句中的并列成分用 or 连接。）

考题在线答案 1. A　2. C　3. D　4. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见180页)

听力技巧

预读定位法(利用导言和题与题之间的间隙，预读选项信息，定位出题方向，以便等录音内容开始播放时有目的地捕捉所需信息。)

听力过程

听本课 **Listening and Speaking** 完成以下习题



1. The band has wonderful _____.

A. singers B. dancers C. musicians

2. What do they do when they have different ideas?

A. Sit. B. Fight. C. Sit and talk.

3. _____ is always a good way to solve disagreements.

A. Fighting B. Discussion C. Quarrelling

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

概括全文

The passage mainly tells about having good relationships in the community. To work towards a peaceful life, we should always try to develop good relationships with the people around us. Be kind and help those in need. We are supposed to understand the fact that people in the community might have different ways of living and thinking. If someone does something that upsets us, we need to discuss the matter in a friendly way. By calmly examining any problems, we can create a relationship of mutual respect and understanding. After all, good neighbours are better than distant relatives.

灵活运用条件状语从句

指出保持友好邻里关系的原因

单元话题

你和张莉是朋友也是同桌，相处友好，你擅长英语，她擅长数学。昨天英语测试，她想抄袭，被你拒绝；想查字典，又被你阻止。她很生气，你也很伤心。你决定下周找她好好谈谈你对这件事的想法和观点，并希望今后你们能够互相帮助，共同进步。

请根据以上介绍发挥想象，关于这件事写一篇80词左右的短文。

审题指导(把握中心，得方向分)

认真阅读写作内容要求，可获得以下写作信息：(1)体裁：本文应为记叙文。

(2)时态：用一般过去时。

(3)提示：get on well with sb., be angry with...

写作技法(学会方法，巧得高分)

“三部曲法”写如何处理矛盾主题、与人友好相处类作文。

三部曲：一：阐明问题；

二：解决问题；

三：总结收尾。

写作模板(学会套路，得基本分)

三部曲法

- 阐明问题 — Zhang Li is my friend... She was very angry with me.
- 解决问题 — I will ask our good friend... for help...I will...
- 总结收尾 — I hope we can...

经典词句(妙用句式，得出彩分)

单词	friend, refuse, chance, hope, progress
短语	get on well with, look up, as well, be angry with, in the future
句子	1. A friend in need is a friend indeed. 2. I think we're supposed to respect others. 3. We shouldn't laugh at others.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Zhang Li is my friend who sits next to me.

We get on well with each other.① She is good at math and I do well in English. Yesterday we had an English exam. She wanted to copy mine, but I refused. She wanted to look it up in her dictionary but I stopped her as well. She was very angry with me and I felt upset. Next week, I will ask our good friend Li Lin for help.② I'll find a good chance to talk about it with her.③

I hope we can help each other and make progress in the future.④

点评：本文运用"三部曲法"写作。

一、阐明问题：①句承上启下，引出第一条线，展开叙述。

二、解决问题：②③句提出化解矛盾的方法。

三、总结收尾：④句总结概括对未来的展望。

添彩点：本文运用了 and，but 等连词连接并列句，同时使用短语：get on well with；look up；be angry with 等使文章更生动丰满。



V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见180页）

一、语法专练

1. A better future is the goal of the Chinese people, _____ it's also the common interest of the world. [安徽]

A. so　　B. and　　C. or　　D. but

2. I tried calling you, _____ your phone was out of service. [天水]

A. and　　B. but　　C. so　　D. or

3. "Put on your coat, _____ you will catch a cold!" This is what my mum often says to me.

A. and　　B. but　　C. or　　D. so

4. —Dad, I want to be a policeman in the future.

—Work hard, _____ you will succeed. [益阳]

A. or　　B. and　　C. but

5. Learn more reading skills, _____ you'll be a good reader. [青海]

A. and　　B. or　　C. but

二、单元知识浓缩

根据短文内容或所给提示，在文中空白处填写一个正确的单词。

Did you ever have a fight _____[6] a good friend? It is a really bad feeling if friends don't talk to each other for a c_____[7] of days. That's how I felt last week.

I had a big fight with Steven. He and I play on the same basketball team. Our last game time was changed. Everyone else _____[8] (agree) on the new time. I tried to _____[9] (let) Steven know. I sent him an e-mail. But his computer was still _____[10] (repair). I tried calling him, but his phone was out of s_____[11]. Then I sent him a text message, but he didn't check it. So of course he missed the game. He was very angry. He _____[12] (throw) his basketball, and it hit me. Steven and I were ready _____[13] beat each other!

_____[14] (thank) to Jenny, everything is OK now. We had a good talk and _____[15] (solve) our problem. I'm happy we are friends again. Friendship is important, and we shouldn't fight over such a small matter.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 8 Culture Shapes Us

词汇表听写

魔法六维导图

知识小集

高频单词
- praise ◂ 动词
- private, tidy, Russian, noisy ◂ 形容词
- though ◂ 连词
- bowl, chopstick, spoon, fork, society, pound, human, guest, officer, gun ◂ 名词

重点短语：walks of life // in common // be similar to // other than // take turns // tidy up // hang up

常考句型：
1. Although/Though + 从句，+ 主句
2. 分句，+but+ 分句
3. 主语 +have no idea
4. 主语 +can't help but do sth.

单元语法：though/although 引导的让步状语从句

文化意识
1. 通过对“tidy”的学习，养成整洁卫生的好习惯。Lesson 47
2. 通过对不同国家不同餐桌礼仪的学习，明白入乡随俗尊重他人。Lesson 45 & 47

英语思维

在学习过程中，关注语境对词义的影响，并尝试用英语解释英语。Lesson 44

语言能力

听：听关于西方国家名字的材料，说说中西方名字的区别。Unit Review Listening and Speaking I

说：用自己的语言描述自己或他人的经历。Lesson 45

读：读有关谚语、俗语的文章，理解大意。根据上下文推测生词的意思。Lesson 44

写：能正确运用复合句，会写有关中西方文化差异的简短文章。Unit Review

方法大观

听力技巧：五边处理法（86 页）

阅读策略：跳读查找法（54 页）

写作技法：“三维四线法”写风俗文化类作文（87 页）

解题方法：词语辨析法（60 页，73 页，181 页）；

语法判定法（68 页）；

正确把握语境法（79 页，182 页）；

句子结构分析法（181 页）

学习能力
1. 收集一些国外谚语，尝试翻译成中文。
2. 读一些关于餐桌礼仪文化类文章，了解中西方文化的差异，热爱祖国文化。

记忆大师

Lesson 43

必背单词

1. **bowl** *n.* 碗 →a bowl of 一碗
2. **chopstick** *n.* 筷子
3. **spoon** *n.* 匙勺
4. **fork** *n.* 叉子
5. **underground** *adj.* 地下的；
   n. 地铁 →underground parking lot 地下停车场

必背短语

6. have no idea 不知道
7. go shopping 去购物
8. instead of 代替；而不是
9. lucky money 压岁钱
10. temple fair 庙会

必背句子

11. I know **Christmas is coming**.
    我知道圣诞节快到了。
12. It's **the most important** festival in China.
    在中国它是最重要的节日。

Lesson 44

必背单词

1. **society** *n.* 社会
2. **pound** *n.* 镑；磅
3. **whether** *conj.* 是否；不管；无论
4. **human** *n. & adj.* 人（的）；人类（的）

必背短语

5. walks of life 行业；阶层；各行各业
6. in common 共有；共同

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

7. be similar to 和……相似
8. other than 不；不同于；除了……以外
9. human being 人类

‖必背句子

10. **Whether** the sayings are in Chinese, English, **or** any other language, they share something in common.
无论这些谚语是中文的、英文的，还是其他语言的，它们都表达了相同的意思。

Lesson 45

‖必背单词

1. **though** *conj.* 虽然；尽管；即使；然而
2. **praise** *v.* & *n.* 称赞；赞扬 →praise sb. for sth. 因某事赞扬某人 →in praise of 赞扬
3. **private** *adj.* 私人的；私有的 →in private 秘密地；私下地
4. **guest** *n.* 客人

‖必背短语

5. pay for 为……付款
6. offer sb. sth. 给某人提供某物
7. take turns 轮流；依次

‖必背句子

8. In China, **being modest** is a virtue.
在中国，谦虚是一种美德。
9. **It's not polite to** ask an adult's age.
问成年人的年龄是不礼貌的。

Lesson 46

‖必背单词

1. **percent** *n.* 百分之……
2. **official** *adj.* 官方的；正式的
3. **custom** *n.* 习惯；习俗；风俗

‖必背短语

4. according to 根据；依照
5. be home to ……的发源地
6. the number of ……的数量
7. one another 互相

‖必背句子

8. Canada welcomes cultural differences in the people **who** live there.
加拿大欣然接受生活在那里的人们的文化差异。
9. **It is important that** people from different cultures can live together in one country. 来自不同文化的人们能够共同生活在一个国家，这很重要。

Lesson 47

‖必背单词

1. **tidy** *v.* 使整洁；使整齐；整理 *adj.* 整洁的；整齐的 →tidy up 整理；收拾；归置
2. **Russian** *adj.* 俄罗斯的 *n.* 俄罗斯人；俄语 →Russia *n.* 俄罗斯
3. **noisy** *adj.* 喧闹的；吵闹的 →noise *n.* 噪音

‖必背短语

4. hang up 挂上 →hang 悬挂；吊着 → 过去式、过去分词 hung→hang 绞死 → 过去式、过去分词 hanged
5. at the table 在桌旁
6. invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事

‖必背句子

7. It's OK in China, but it's **considered** rude in Western cultures.
这在中国可以，但在西方文化中被认为是粗鲁的。

Lesson 48

‖必背单词

1. **chalk** *n.* 粉笔
2. **officer** *n.* 政府官员 →police officer 警察；警官
3. **gun** *n.* 枪

‖必背短语

4. be ready for 为……做好准备
5. pass sth. to sb. 把某物递给某人
6. change one's mind 改变主意

‖必背句子

7. I don't know **what** we'll **do with** them.
我不知道我们如何处理它们。
8. **I couldn't help but** laugh when I read your e-mail.
当我读你的电子邮件的时候，我忍不住大笑。

单元必背语法

1. My parents love to have lunch and shop there, **although** parking is a problem. 尽管停车是个问题，我的父母还是喜欢在那里吃午饭和购物。
2. **Although** sayings are usually simple and easy to remember, they are full of deep meaning.
虽然谚语通常简单易记，但是它们充满深意。
3. **Though** I have lived here for a long time, I still don't feel Canadian. 虽然我已经在这里生活了很长时间，但我仍然觉得自己不是加拿大人。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 43 A Visit to Chinatown

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What do you usually do to prepare for the Spring Festival? 通常你会做些什么来为春节做准备?
- What Western festivals are celebrated in China? 在中国（人们）会庆祝哪些西方节日?

It's Saturday evening. Li Ming, Jenny and Brian are chatting online. 星期六晚上，李明、詹妮和布赖恩正在网上聊天。

课文朗读

Jenny: Hi Li Ming! Guess what we did① today!

相当于 don't know

李明，你好！猜一猜今天我们做了什么！

Li Ming: I have no idea. Did you go shopping? I know Christmas is coming.② 我不知道。你们去购物了吗？我知道圣诞节就快到了。

Brian: You are smart. But did you know that we went shopping in Chinatown?

你太聪明了。但是你知道我们去唐人街购物了吗?

Li Ming: Really? Did you have a good time?

真的吗？你们玩得高兴吗?

Brian: Yes. We bought a big Christmas tree, some decorations /ˌdekəˈreɪʃnz/ and gifts. I really enjoyed the lunch we had there. I had a bowl /bəʊl/ of noodles, and I used chopsticks /ˈtʃɒpstɪks/③ and a spoon /spuːn/ instead of a fork /fɔːk/ and a knife.

是的。我们买了一棵大圣诞树，一些装饰品和一些礼物。我十分喜欢我们在那里吃的午餐。我吃了一碗面条，我用了筷子和勺子而不是叉子和刀。

Jenny: My parents love to have lunch and shop there, although④ parking is a problem. My dad had to park his car in the underground /ˈʌndəgraʊnd/ parking lot. 尽管停车是个问题，但是我的父母很喜欢到那儿吃午餐和购物。我父亲不得不把他的车停到地下停车场。

Li Ming: Do they speak Chinese there?

在那里他们说汉语吗?

Brian: In the stores and restaurants, people spoke English to me, but many of them speak Chinese to each other. And there were red lanterns /ˈlæntənz/ everywhere.

在商店和饭店里，人们用英语和我交谈，但是他们中的许多人用汉语相互交谈。那里到处都是红灯笼。

Jenny: Danny and I watched a wonderful dragon /ˈdrægən/ dancing performance during the Spring Festival last year.

去年春节期间丹尼和我观看了一场精彩的舞龙表演。

Li Ming: That's interesting. I hope we have a North American town here.

那太有趣了。我希望我们这里有一个北美城镇。

Brian: Then you can celebrate Christmas and get gifts from Santa Claus. 那样你就可以庆祝圣诞节并从圣诞老人那里得到礼物了。

Li Ming: I love Santa Claus. Do you believe it's Santa Claus who⑤ brings you gifts, Brian?

我喜欢圣诞老人。布赖恩，你相信是圣诞老人给你带来礼物吗?

Brian: Of course not⑥. Only little kids believe that. But we do⑦ have lots of fun.

当然不相信，只有小孩子才会相信。但是我们的确很高兴。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Jenny: What do you usually do during the Spring Festival, Li Ming?

李明，通常你们在春节期间会做些什么？

Li Ming: There are so many special things about the Spring Festival. Young children usually get gifts—lucky money. We eat dumplings and many other delicious foods. We have temple /ˈtempl/ fairs and all kinds of performances. It's the most important festival in China.

有如此多关于春节的特别的事情。小孩子们通常会收到礼物——压岁钱。我们吃饺子和许多其他美味的食物。我们有庙会及各种各样的表演。在中国，春节是最重要的节日。

Brian: I hope[8] I can go to Chinatown again to see the Spring Festival.

我希望我能再次到唐人街去看春节。

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文并写正确 (T) 或错误 (F)。

1. Jenny and Brian went shopping in Chinatown.

   詹妮和布赖恩在唐人街购物。 (　　)

2. Jenny and her parents live in Chinatown.

   詹妮和她的父母居住在唐人街。 (　　)

3. There's a North American town in China.

   在中国有一个北美城镇。 (　　)

4. Some Chinese people eat dumplings during the Spring Festival.

   一些中国人在春节期间吃饺子。 (　　)

2 What utensils do you usually use? Look at the pictures and fill in the blanks.

你通常用什么餐具？看图片并填空。

cup 杯子

When you eat noodles, you usually use _____. 当你吃面条时，你通常用 _____。

When you eat steak, you usually use _____. 当你吃牛排时，你通常用 _____。

When you eat porridge, you usually use _____. 当你喝粥时，你通常用 _____。

When you drink milk, you usually use _____. 当你喝牛奶时，你通常用 _____。

When you drink tea, you usually use _____. 当你喝茶时，你通常用 _____。

PROJECT

活动设计

The Spring Festival and Christmas

春节和圣诞节

How do Chinese people celebrate the Spring Festival? How do Western people celebrate Christmas? Read the following facts and use them to fill in the circles. Think about what facts can go in the middle. What else do you know about these holidays? 中国人如何庆祝春节？西方人如何庆祝圣诞节？阅读下面的事实并用它们来填写圆圈。想一想什么事实应填在中间。对于这些节日，你还了解些什么？

- make dumplings 包饺子
- buy new clothes 买新衣服
- clean up the house 打扫房屋
- give lucky money to children 给孩子们压岁钱
- hang red lanterns 挂红灯笼
- sing Christmas songs 唱圣诞歌
- visit relatives and friends 拜访亲戚和朋友
- go to a temple fair 去庙会
- decorate a Christmas tree 装饰圣诞树
- buy some Christmas gifts 买一些圣诞礼物
- attend a family get-together 参加家庭聚会



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·考点批注　·考点应用

★Guess what we did today!

① 宾语从句

引导词	（1）当宾语从句是陈述句时，用 that 来引导从句。that 常无具体意义，一般可省略。 （2）当宾语从句表示不肯定或疑问时，需用 if 或 whether 来引导从句。 （3）当宾语从句是由特殊疑问句变化而来时，原句中的疑问词充当连接代词（who, whose, what, which）或连接副词 (when, where, why, how) 引导宾语从句。
语序	宾语从句的语序是陈述句的语序，即“连接代词 / 副词 + 主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分”。

宾语从句的时态
(1) 主句是一般现在时，从句根据实际情况使用任何时态。
(2) 主句是过去时态，从句用过去时态的某种形式。
(3) 当宾语从句表示的是一个客观真理或者事实时，即使主句是过去时，从句也用一般现在时。

e.g. I hear that English is not easy to learn.
我听说英语不容易学。
Could you tell me if/whether Miss Brown lives in that house?
你能告诉我布朗小姐是否住在那所房子里吗？
I wonder who she is.　陈述语序
我想知道她是谁。

考题在线 1 —What did Tom say to you just now, John?
—He asked _____.
[眉山]
A. why I am so happy today
B. what will I do for the weekend
C. who did I play football with after school
D. if I could go to the movies with him tonight

点拨：考查宾语从句的用法。句意：——约翰，刚才汤姆对你说什么了？——他问 _____。本句为宾语从句，应用陈述句语序，且主句为一般过去时，从句应用过去相应时态。

★I know Christmas is coming.

敲黑板 中考高频考点，用进行时态表将来。要牢记哟！

② is coming 现在进行时表将来

可以用现在进行时表将来的词有：come, go, leave, begin/start, arrive/reach/get to, stop, return“有来有去要离开，动身出发到车站，不知何时会归来”。

e.g. Look! The bus is coming. 看！公交车过来了。

拓展：在英语中，某些表示位置移动的词及瞬间性动词，常用它们的进行时表示将来。

考题在线 2 Jenny _____ on holiday now. I wonder when she _____ back.
A. is being; comes　　B. is; is coming
C. will be; will come　　D. will be; is coming

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★I had a bowl of noodles, and I used chopsticks and a spoon instead of a fork and a knife.

chopstick 常用复数形式。

③ **chopstick** /'tʃɒpstɪk/ *n.* one of the two thin sticks that you use to eat food in many countries in Asia 筷子

a pair of chopsticks 一双筷子

e.g. I hold a pair of chopsticks in my hand.
我手中拿着一双筷子。



★My parents love to have lunch and shop there, although parking is a problem.

④ **although** /ɔ:l'ðəʊ/ *conj.* 虽然；尽管

although 引导让步状语从句，一般位于句首，有时与 though 可互换，都不能与 but 连用，但可以与 yet, still 等词连用。

e.g. Although he was ill, he still worked hard.
他虽然生病了，但仍努力工作。

考题在线 3 _____ the girl is only six years old, she knows more than 300 ancient Chinese poems. [海南]

A. If B. Unless C. Although

点拨：考查连词辨析。句意：尽管这个女孩只有6岁，她却知道300多首古诗。前后句之间是让步关系，应用 although 引导让步状语从句。

★Do you believe it's Santa Claus who brings you gifts, Brian?

⑤ 强调句型句法分析

本句中宾语从句是一个强调句型，其构成为“It is/was +被强调部分+ that/who +句子其他部分.”，被强调部分放在 It is/was 之后，其他部分置于 that/who 之后。

被强调部分可以是主语、宾语、表语或状语等。强调的主语如果是人，可以由 who 代替 that。

e.g. It was I who/that met an old classmate of mine in the street. → 强调主语
是我在街上碰到我的一个老同学的。

It is English that I like best. → 强调宾语
我最喜欢的是英语。

【难点】特殊句式中的强调句型

如果强调的是特殊疑问句中的疑问词，其结构为“特殊疑问词+ is/was + it + that +其余部分?”。

e.g. Who was it that bought you a bike?
是谁给你买了一辆自行车?



世界上只有想不通的人，没有走不通的路

★Of course not.

⑥ **Of course not.** 当然不是。

① not 可用于一些副词或词组如 why, perhaps, probably, sometimes, certainly, of course 等之后。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

代替前面的整个句子

e.g. —You don't want to go to the park? 你不想去公园?
—Why not? 为什么不呢?

② not 也可以用在一些动词或词组如 believe, guess, expect, hope, imagine, be afraid 等之后。

代替前面的整个句子

e.g. Maybe I'll regret it, but I hope not. 也许我会后悔，但我希望不会。

③用在一些连词 as, if, or 等的后面。

代替前面的整个句子

e.g. Walk fast! If not, we won't catch the bus.
快走吧！不然我们就赶不上那辆公交车了。

考题在线 4 —Would you mind my turning up the TV? The New Year concert has just begun.
— _____. Just go ahead. [广东]
A. Please don't　　B. Better not
C. I'm afraid not　　D. Of course not

点拨:考查交际用语。句意：——你介意我把电视声音开大点吗？新年音乐会刚刚开始。——当然不会。你随意。本题中，由后一句 Just go ahead(你继续)可知，语境中不介意把电视声音调大一些。故用 of course not "当然不会"来表达。

Goals determine what you're going to be.
人生的奋斗目标决定你将成为怎样的人。

★But we do have lots of fun.

⑦【易错】do + 动词原形的用法

句中的助动词 do 用来强调动词 have，结构为：do/does/did + 动词原形，起加强语气的作用，意为"确实；的确；务必"等。

e.g. They do study hard at school.
在学校他们的确非常努力。
She does like English. 她确实喜欢英语。

do 有人称和时态的变化，句中的实义动词用动词原形。

考题在线 5 The children _____ have a wonderful time last weekend.
A. do　　B. did　　C. does　　D. will

★I hope I can go to Chinatown again to see the Spring Festival.

⑧ hope /həʊp/ *n.* & *v.* 希望

e.g. I hope (that) I can fly into space one day.
我希望有一天飞往太空。
My mother wishes me to have a bright future.
妈妈希望我能有一个美好的未来.
Wish me luck! 祝我交好运吧!

辨析：hope 与 wish

hope to do sth.
hope+(that) 从句

wish to do sth.
wish+(that) 从句
wish sb. to do sth.
wish sb. sth.

考题在线 6 我们希望青少年远离香烟。
We _____ _____ teenagers can keep away from cigarettes.

考题在线答案 1. D　2. B　3. C　4. D　5. B　6. hope that

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见180页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成单词

1. People in the western countries use the knives and f_____ when they eat food.

2. A b_____ of hot chicken soup is good for you. 【导学号：2994592】

3. Her soup s_____ dropped onto the ground.

4. He is from England. He is not used to using c_____.

5. Mice stay u_____ most of the time. We can't see them often.

二、单项选择

6. _____ Aron has lost his right arm, he never gives up his dream to climb mountains. [内江]

A. Since B. Although

C. Unless D. If

7. —Honey, where are you?

—I _____. Just let me put on my shoes. [河南]

A. come B. came

C. am coming D. have come

8. —Do you mind my opening the window?

—_____. Please do it now.

A. Of course not B. Yes, I do

C. Certainly D. I'm sorry

9. It was the boy _____ had been in prison _____ stole the money.

A. who; where B. that; how

C. who; that D. that; which

10. —I'd like to know _____ for the picnic.

—I'm not sure. Maybe she has bought some drinks and snacks. [龙东]

A. why did she buy so little food

B. what she has prepared

C. when is she leaving

三、连词成句

11. have, took, idea, who, I, the, no, book

_____.

12. shopping, in, we, Chinatown, went

_____.

13. playing, you, fun, games, did, have

_____?

14. China, the, is, important, it, most, in, festival

_____.

15. is, Santa Claus, who, it, you, gifts, brings

_____.



成功便是站起来比倒下去多一次

宋德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 44 Popular Sayings

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you know any English or Chinese sayings? What are they?
  你知道一些英文或中文的谚语吗？它们是什么？
- Do you use sayings in your daily life? Give an example.
  在你的日常生活中你用谚语吗？举例子。

Seeing is believing.
眼见为实。
Where there is a will, there is a way.
有志者事竟成。
An apple a day keeps the doctor away.
一天一苹果，医生远离我。

课文朗读

Have you ever heard these old sayings? Sayings are an important part of the language and culture of every society /sə'saɪətɪ/. ① Although sayings are usually simple and easy to remember, they are full of ② deep meaning. They come from the experience of generations /ˌdʒenə'reɪʃnz/ of people, and from different walks of life. Take a look at these sayings:

你曾经听过这些古老的谚语吗？谚语是每个社会的语言和文化中重要的一部分。尽管谚语通常都既简单又便于记忆，但它们都饱含深意。它们来自几代人的经验，来自各行各业。看一看这些谚语：

Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy /'welθɪ/ and wise. 早睡早起使人健康、富有和聪明。

A journey of a thousand miles begins with a single step. 千里之行，始于足下。

Well begun is half done.
良好的开端是成功的一半。

Don't be penny /'penɪ/ wise and pound /paʊnd/ foolish/'fu:lɪʃ/.
不要小事聪明，大事糊涂。

Actions speak louder than words.
行动重于言辞。

Many hands make light work.
众人拾柴火焰高。

These sayings help people understand the world and form good habits, or encourage people to ③ work hard and as a team. Whether /'weðə/ ④ the sayings are in Chinese, English, or any other ⑤ language, they share something in common.

这些谚语帮助人们了解世界并形成良好的习惯，或鼓励人们努力工作，并作为一个团队工作。不管是中文谚语、英文谚语还是其他语言的谚语，它们都有共同之处。

Do you know the English for the Chinese saying "ai wu ji wu"? That's "Love me, love my dog". And "Every dog has his day" is similar to ⑥ the Chinese saying "shi nian he dong, shi nian he xi". Although Chinese sayings use images of animals or things other than ⑦ dogs, the meanings are almost the same. Human /'hju:mən/ ⑧ beings share similar hopes and fears.

你知道中文谚语"爱屋及乌"的英文（说法）吗？那就是"Love me, love my dog."。"Every dog

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

has his day”与中文谚语“十年河东，十年河西”的意思相近。尽管中文谚语使用除狗以外的其他动物或事物形象，但（谚语的）含义几乎相同。人类有相似的期望和担忧。

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the Chinese sayings below and find the matching English expressions from the lesson. 阅读下面的中文谚语，并从课文中找出相应的英文表达。

爱屋及乌。Love me, love my dog.

眼见为实。

十年河东，十年河西。

行动重于言辞。

千里之行，始于足下。

众人拾柴火焰高。

不要小事聪明，大事糊涂。

有志者事竟成。

2 Fill in the blanks using the sayings from the lesson. 用课文中的谚语填空。

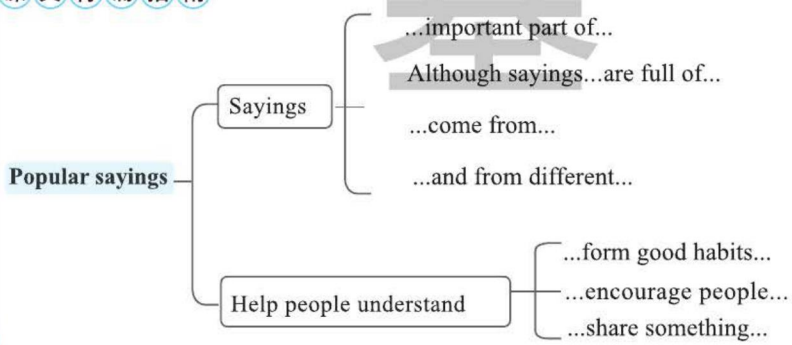
1. Seeing is believing. We warmly welcome you to visit our factory.
   眼见为实。我们热烈欢迎你参观我们的工厂。
2. _____. It is very important to make a good start.
   _____。有一个好的开始很重要。
3. Cleaning the room will not take long if we all help. You know, _____.
   如果我们都帮忙，打扫房间将不会花费太长时间。你知道，_____。
4. _____. We should do more and speak less.
   _____。我们应该多做事少说话。
5. Although you failed the exam, you shouldn't give up. Remember _____. 尽管你考试不及格，但是你不应该放弃。记住_____。

3 Work in pairs. Discuss the meanings of the following sayings. Can you find the matching Chinese sayings? Then make sentences with the sayings you have learned.

两人一组活动。讨论以下谚语的含义。你能找到相应的中文谚语吗？然后用你所学的谚语造句。

- When in Rome, do as the Romans do.
  入乡随俗。
- First come, first served.
  先到先得。
- It is never too late to mend.
  亡羊补牢，为时不晚。
- No pain, no gain.
  不劳无获。

课文背诵指南



荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

（答案见181页）

阅读策略

跳读查找法（阅读时带着问题读文章，做题时，我们可以边读边做记号，这样能加强阅读的针对性，提高做题的准确率。细节题主要考查考生对某句话的理解，我们可以根据题干内容从原文中找到相关的句子，然后进行比较和分析，确定最佳答案。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 Lesson 44，选择正确答案

1. What have you learned from this text? （主旨大意题）

A. Poems. B. Sayings. C. Songs. D. Articles.

二、细读文章，解决细节类题目

2. ⊙ Sayings are an important part of the _____ of every society. （细节理解题）

A. language B. culture

C. idea D. language and culture

3. ⊙ Which saying is about health? （细节理解题）

A. Seeing is believing.

B. Where there is a will, there is a way.

C. An apple a day keeps the doctor away.

D. Many hands make light work.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★**Sayings are an important part of the language and culture of every society.**

① **society** /sə'saɪətɪ/ *n.* people in general 社会

e.g. They were discussing the problems of Western society.

他们正在讨论西方社会的问题。

Science benefits society.

科学造福社会。

We are all members of the society.

我们都是这个协会的成员。

society 在统指“社会”时，是不可数名词，前面通常不加冠词。

society 作“社会团体；协会”讲时，是可数名词，前面可加 the。

★**Although sayings are usually simple and easy to remember, they are full of deep meaning.**

② **be full of** 充满……的

e.g. Her eyes were full of tears.

她眼泪汪汪的。

The bottle is full of/filled with water.

这个瓶子里装满了水。

full of 可以和 filled with 互换使用，在句中可作表语或后置定语。



与其在别人的生活里跑龙套，不如精彩做自己。

考题在线 1 The schoolbag is _____ books.

A. full with B. filled of

C. filled with D. fulled of

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**These sayings help people understand the world and form good habits, or encourage people to work hard and as a team.**

③ **encourage sb. to do sth.** 鼓励某人做某事 其否定形式为：encourage sb. not to do sth. 鼓励某人不要做某事。

e.g. The teacher encouraged us not to be nervous on stage.
老师鼓励我们在舞台上不要紧张。
My parents encouraged my spending less. 我父母亲鼓励我少花钱。
encourage 还可跟“形容词性物主代词＋动名词”作宾语。

考题在线 2 Jessica's parents always encourage her _____ out her opinions.
A. speak　　B. speaks　　C. to speak　　D. will speak

★**Whether the sayings are in Chinese, English, or any other language, they share something in common.**

④ 【重点】【难点】**whether** /'weðə/ *conj.* 是否；不管；无论

e.g. I don't know whether to accept the offer or refuse it.
我不知道是接受这个提议还是拒绝它。
① whether 作“是……还是……”讲时，表示一种选择，其后可以跟不定式短语。
Whether they will consider this opinion or not is not clear.
他们是否要考虑这个意见还不清楚。
② whether 作“是否”讲时，可用来引导名词性从句，即主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。
Whether others help you or not, you may rely on my help.
无论别人帮不帮你，你都可以依赖我的帮助。
③ whether 作“无论……还是……”讲时，用于引导让步状语从句。
He asked if/whether we wanted a drink.
他问我们是否想喝一杯。
Whether it rains or not doesn't concern me.
天是否下雨与我无关。
Whether he has stolen the money, I don't know.
他是否偷了钱，我不知道。
I haven't decided whether to go to the cinema or stay at home.
后跟带 to 的不定式
我还没有决定是去看电影还是呆在家里。
It depends on whether he is ready or not.
放在介词后，引导宾语从句
这取决于他是否做好了准备。
The question is whether we should go on with the work.
引导表语从句
问题是我们是否应该继续做这项工作。

辨析：whether 与 if
●相同点：引导宾语从句表示“是否”时，两者可以互换。
●不同点：
①当主语从句位于句首时，只能使用 whether...or not，而不能使用 if...or not。
②当宾语从句提到句首时，只能用 whether 引导，而不用 if。
③whether 可以跟带 to 的不定式，if 则不能。
④whether 及其引导的成分可放于介词之后，作介词的宾语，但 if 不能。
⑤whether 可以引导主语或表语从句，而 if 不能

考题在线 3 —The pollution in the sea is terrible!
—I believe the sea will be cleaner _____ we take action now. [葫芦岛]
A. though　　B. if　　C. unless　　D. until

考题在线 4 — I am worried about _____ I can enter a good high school or not.
—Take it easy. Believe in yourself! [咸宁]
A. that　　B. when　　C. whether　　D. where

点拨：考查宾语从句引导词用法辨析。第一句句意：我担心我能否进入一所好的高中。结合句意可知答案。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

any other 后跟单数可数名词，是指在同一范围内除了某人或某物以外的其他人或事物。

“any+单数可数名词”意为“任何一个”，范围适用于三者或三者以上。

⑤ **any other 其他任何一个的**

e.g. Tom is taller than any other student in his class.

汤姆比班上其他任何一个同学都高。

Tom from Class 2 is taller than any student from Class 3.

二班的汤姆比三班的任何一个学生都高。

考题在线 5 —Hi, Jane! I'll go to Shijiazhuang next month.

—Great! The glass bridge there is _____ than any other one in the world. [长春]

A. long　　B. longer

C. longest　　D. the longest

点拨：句意：——简，你好！我下个月将去石家庄。——太好了！那里的玻璃桥比世界上的其他任何一座都长。根据句中的标志词 than，可知该句应用比较级。

辨析：be similar to, be familiar with, be similar in 与 be familiar to

- be similar to 与……相似
- be familiar with （人）对某事/某物很熟悉
- be similar in 在……方面相似
- be familiar to 某物/某事为某人所熟悉

★And “Every dog has his day” is similar to the Chinese saying “shi nian he dong, shi nian he xi”.

⑥ **be similar to 与……相似**

e.g. My problems are similar to yours.

我的问题与你的问题类似。

I'm familiar with the city.

我对这个城市很熟悉。

They are similar in the eating habits.

他们在饮食习惯方面很相似。

The name is familiar to me. 我对这个名字很熟悉。

★Although Chinese sayings use images of animals or things other than dogs, the meanings are almost the same.

⑦ **other than 而不是；除……以外**

【难点】other than 的用法：

① other than = not, instead of 不，非，而不是

e.g. She borrowed some reference books other than novels.

她借了一些参考书，而不是小说。

There is nobody here other than me.

这里除了我以外没有人。

② other than = except, but 除……以外

They were given nothing other than dry bread and water.

他们只得到了干面包和水。

It was no other than my best friend, Mary.

这正是我最好的朋友玛丽。

It was none other than Tom! We thought he was in Africa.

不是别人正是汤姆！我们以为他在非洲。

other than 的其他搭配：

① nothing other than 只是；仅仅

② no other than 正是；恰恰是

③ none other than 不是别人/别的东西，正是……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 6 All parts of the house _____ one of the windows were still in good condition.

A. other than　　B. no other than

C. less than　　D. more than

Live and learn.
活到老，学到老。

★**Human beings share similar hopes and fears.**

⑧ **human**/ 'hju:mən/ *n.* & *adj.* belonging to or relating to people

人（的），人类（的）

e.g. He is quite human after all.　human 作形容词，意为“通人情的；人类的”。

毕竟，他还是挺通人情的。

Dogs can hear much better than humans.

狗的听觉比人灵敏得多。　human 作名词，意为“人”，同义短语为 human being。

考题在线答案　1. C　2. C　3. B　4. C　5. B　6. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见181页）

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. Contact with other people is a basic _____（人的）need.

2. I've lost six _____（磅）since I started my diet.

3. _____（社会）has changed a lot in the past 50 years.

4. She was in doubt _____（是否）she was right.

5. The customs in Qingdao are _____（相似的）to those in Yantai.

二、选择方框内的短语，并用其适当形式填空

be full of; be similar to; give up; other than; walks of life

6. Never _____, and you will achieve your dream.　[六盘水]

7. The room _____ beautiful flowers.

8. The representatives（代　表）from different _____ will have a meeting in Beijing.

9. My shoes _____ the ones you had on yesterday.

10. She has no close friends _____ him.

三、单项选择

11. To take care of my father and to take care of my mother _____ my duty.

A. be　　B. is　　C. are　　D. were

12. _____ to our Water Park. You can have fun here.

A. Welcome　　B. Glad

C. Invite　　D. Going

13. My teacher encouraged _____ a summer course to improve my writing skills.

A. for me taking　　B. mine taking

C. for me to take　　D. me to take

14. My mother says my friend is similar _____ me, but I think she is different _____ me.　[滨州]

A. as; from　　B. to; from

C. to; to　　D. as; to

15. My neighbor asked me _____ I heard the big noise last night or not.　[衡阳]

A. whether　　B. if　　C. what

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 45 Different Manners

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- In your opinion what are good manners? 在你看来，什么是良好的礼仪?
- Do you think cultures shape ① manners? 你认为文化对礼仪有影响吗?

课文朗读

I have many good friends in Canada, though /ðəʊ/ ② Canadian culture is different from Chinese culture.

虽然加拿大文化不同于中国文化，但是我在加拿大有好多朋友。

My name is Wu Zhou. I have lived in Canada for twenty-three years. In Canada, I call myself Joe Wu. Joe is an English name that sounds ③ like Zhou.

我叫吴周。我已经在加拿大生活了二十三年了。在加拿大，我称自己为吴乔。乔是一个听起来像周的英文名字。

Though I have lived here for a long time, I still don't feel Canadian. This is probably because North American manners and Chinese manners are so different.

尽管我已经生活在这里很长时间了，但我仍然觉得自己不像一个加拿大人。这可能是因为北美的礼仪和中国的礼仪很不同吧。

In China, being modest /ˈmɒdɪst/ is a virtue /ˈvɜːtʃuː/. If someone praises /preɪzɪz/ ④ you and says that your English is excellent, you should be modest and say, "No, no. My English is still poor". But in North America, this is usually a sign of being weak and not confident.You should just say, "Thank you." 在中国，谦虚是一种美德。如果有人夸赞你，说你的英语很好，你应该谦虚地说："不，不，我的英语仍然很差。"但是在北美，这通常是懦弱和不自信的表现。你应该只说："谢谢你。"

In Canada, people only ask children about their age. It's not polite to ask an adult's age. They think it is private/ˈpraɪvət/ ⑤. But this is common in many places in China.

在加拿大，人们只询问儿童的年龄。询问成年人的年龄是不礼貌的。他们认为这是个人隐私。但是在中国许多地方，这是很常见的。

In both China and North America, it is polite to offer an elderly person a seat on the bus. In North America, however, an elderly person may feel embarrassed about being offered a seat.

在中国和北美，在公共汽车上为老年人让座是礼貌的。但是在北美，老年人可能会为被让座而感到尴尬。

When Chinese people eat out in restaurants, they may take turns ⑥ paying for the meal. In Canada, however, people often share the cost of a meal.

当中国人外出在餐馆吃饭时，他们可能会轮流结账。而在加拿大，人们经常会共同负担一顿饭的花费。

In China, if your guests /gests/ have no food on their plates, it's polite to put food on their plates. In Canada, you pass food to guests, but you don't usually put food on their plates.

在中国，如果你的客人的盘中没有了食物，给客人把食物放到他们的盘中，这是礼貌的。在加拿大，你把食物递给客人，但通常不会把食物放到他们的盘中。

In China, people seldom ⑦ give extra /'ekstrə/ money to waiters /'weɪtəz/, waitresses, taxi drivers or hotel workers. In North America, this is always done. It is called "tipping" /tɪpɪŋ/. 在中国，人们很少给男服务员、女服务员、出租车司机或旅馆工作人员额外的钱。在北美，人们总是会这么做。人们把它称为"给小费"。

It's interesting to experience ⑧ two different

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

cultures. I think understanding cultural differences really helps us to understand each other, live together and work together.

体验两种不同的文化很有趣。我认为了解文化差异十分有助于我们相互理解，共同生活，一起工作。

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and match the behaviours with the correct countries.

阅读课文并把举止行为与正确的国家连线。

Canada
加拿大

China
中国

asking an adult's age
询问成年人的年龄

putting food on a guest's plate
把食物放在客人的盘子里

giving a tip to waiters and hotel workers
给服务员和旅馆工作人员小费

sharing the cost of a meal in a restaurant
共同负担饭店里一顿饭的花费

2 Match and complete the sentences.

连线并完成句子。

Although people have different cultures and customs, 尽管人们有不同的文化和风俗习惯，	but he has already made many friends there. 但他在那儿已经交了许多朋友。
Brian hasn't been to China, 布赖恩还没去过中国，	they have the same feelings. 他们有相同的感觉。
He has been at the new school for only a few days, 他来到这所新学校才仅仅几天，	he still feels lonely. 他仍然感到孤独。
Though Liu Feng has many friends in America, 尽管刘峰在美国有很多朋友，	but he knows a lot about our country. 但是他非常了解我们的国家。

Learn to learn 学会学习

Note that we should not use "although/though"and "but" together in the same sentence. 注意我们不应该将 "although/though" 和 "but" 一起用在同一个句子中。

3 Fill in the blanks with the words or phrases in the box. 用方框中的单词或短语填空。

pay for 为……付款 , praise 赞扬 , take turns 轮流 , modest 谦虚的 , private 私人的

1. We should _____ little Debbie for her courage. 我们应该 _____ 小黛比的勇气。
2. It's a long way. We can _____ driving. 这是很长的一段路。我们可以 _____ 开车。
3. They asked him to _____ the damage, but he refused. 他们让他为损失 _____ ，但他拒绝了。
4. Don't talk about other people's _____ things. It's not polite.
   不要讨论他人的 _____ 事情。这是不礼貌的。
5. Jack is a _____ man who is admired by many people. 杰克是一个被很多人钦佩的 _____ 人。

4 What cultural differences, besides the ones already discussed, have you noticed between China and English-speaking countries? Share your ideas with your classmates. 除了已经被讨论过的文化差异外，你还注意到中国和说英语国家间的什么文化差异了吗？把你的想法和你的同学们分享。

关注微信公众号 "教辅资料站" 获取更多学习资料

•考点批注

•考点应用

★Do you think cultures shape manners?

① **shape** /ʃeɪp/ *v.* 影响……的发展

shape 作动词，还可意为“使成形，使成为……形状”。

shape 作名词，意为“形状；样子；外形”。

e.g. It was the Greeks who shaped the thinking of westerners.
是希腊人影响了西方人的思维。

He was shaping an apple. 他在把一个苹果削成某种形状。

The mountain has a strange shape.
那座山形状很奇特。

方法真题练

考题在线 1 —Look at the clouds, so beautiful!

—Wow, so many different _____, horses, sheep, flowers

[湖州]

A. sizes　　B. shapes　　C. colors　　D. styles

点拨：本题运用词语辨析法。句意：——看这些云彩，好美呀！——哇！如此多不同的形状，（像）马、羊、花……size 型号；shape 形状；color 颜色；style 样式。

请开始你的表演



★I have many good friends in Canada, though Canadian culture is different from Chinese culture.

② **though** /ðəʊ/ *conj.* 虽然，尽管

though 引导让步状语从句，相当于 although；但 although 更为正式，都不能与 but 同时使用，但可以与 yet 或 still 连用。

e.g. Though/Although she works hard at English, (yet) her English is very poor. 尽管她努力学习英语，但是她的英语还是很差。

考题在线 2 _____ we didn't win the basketball game, we were satisfied with our hard work. [连云港]

A. If　　B. Though　　C. Since　　D. Because

点拨：考查连词辨析。if 如果，引导条件状语从句；though 尽管，引导让步状语从句；since 自从……以来，引导时间状语从句；because 因为，引导原因状语从句。根据主句“我们对我们付出的努力还是满意的”可知，从句表述的应该是“尽管我们没有在篮球比赛中获奖”。

★Joe is an English name that sounds like Zhou.

③ **sound** /saʊnd/ *n.* 声音 *v.* 听起来

sound 作动词的用法：
① sound 可作连系动词，后跟形容词。
② sound like 意为“听起来像……”，后跟名词（短语）。
③ sound 后还可跟 as if，后跟从句，意为“听起来像……”。

e.g. Your idea sounds very good.
你的主意听起来很好。

Her voice sounds beautiful. 她的声音听起来很美。

The man doesn't sound like an American.
那个人（讲话的口音）听起来不像一个美国人。

She sounds as if she were a ten-year-old girl.
她说话的声音听起来像个十岁的女孩。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

与 sound 类似的连系动词还有：look, smell, taste, feel, seem 等。

e.g. The silk feels very soft. 这丝绸摸起来很柔软。

Can you hear all the sounds in nature?

你能听见自然界的所有声音吗？

Her voice is loud. 她的声音响亮。

The noise makes people bored. 噪音令人感到厌烦。

辨析：sound，voice 与 noise

① sound 指自然界里的一切声音

② voice 指从人口中发出的声音，也指一些悦耳的、听起来让人觉得舒服的声音

③ noise 指噪音，也指听起来让人感觉不舒服的声音

考题在线 3 —Do you enjoy Chinese folk songs?

—Yes, the folk songs_____ nice. [福建 A]

A. sound B. smell C. look

点拨：句意：——你喜欢中国民歌吗？——是的，民歌听起来不错。欣赏歌曲需要用耳朵听，sound 听起来，smell 闻起来，look 看起来。

考题在线 4 —Did you hear any strange _____ when the quake happened?

—No. I was in my garden with my flowers and was enjoying the beautiful _____ of my birds at that time.

A. voices; noise B. noises; sound

C. whispers; sound D. sounds; voice

点拨：句意：——当地震发生时，你听到一些奇怪的声音了吗？——没有。我当时正在我的花园里赏花，听着我的鸟儿动听的歌声。sound 指自然界里的一切声音；voice 指从人口中发出的声音，也指一些悦耳的、听起来让人感觉舒服的声音；noise 指噪音，也指听起来让人感觉不舒服的声音；whisper 低语声，私语声。



独坐学霸界

If someone praises you and says that your English is excellent, you should be modest and say, "No, no. My English is still poor."

④ **praise** /preɪz/ *n.* & *v.* 称赞；赞扬

e.g. The guests praised the meal.

客人们称赞这顿饭（做得好）。

They have been praising you all the time. 他们一直在夸奖你。

He praised her for her courage.

由于她的勇敢，他赞扬了她。

He won praise for his modesty.

他因自己的谦虚赢得了赞扬。

She wrote poems in praise of freedom. 她写诗讴歌自由。

praise 作动词的用法：

① praise+n./pron. 称赞……

② praise sb.for sth. 因某事赞扬某人

praise 作名词的用法：

① praise 表示对人或事物的“称赞；赞扬”时，通常为不可数名词；也可用 praises 的形式，但较少见。

② in praise of 赞美

They think it is private.

⑤ **private** /'praɪvət/ *adj.* for use by one person or group, not for everyone 私人的；私有的

e.g. Those are my father's private papers. 那些都是我父亲的私人文件。

Don't repeat what I've told you to anyone. It's private.

private 作形容词时，常在句中作定语或表语。

作定语

作表语

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

不要向任何人转述我告诉你的事，它是私密的。

We can only talk about this matter in private.

我们只能私下谈论这件事。

in private 秘密地；私下地

take turns 常用于 take turns to do sth. 或 take turns (in) doing sth. 结构中，意为“轮流做某事”。

★When Chinese people eat out in restaurants, they may take turns paying for the meal.

⑥【重点】**take turns 轮流**

e.g. We take turns cooking dinner. 我们轮流做饭。

Take turns to ask questions. 轮流提问题。

The nurses attended to the patient in turn/by turns.

护士们轮流护理那个病人。

It's one's turn to do sth. 轮到某人做某事了。

It's your turn to read the text. 轮到你读这篇课文了。

“轮流做某事”的各种表达：

- do sth. in turn
- do sth. by turns
- take turns to do sth.
- take turns (in) doing sth.

考题在线 5 They take turns _____ (look after) the old man.（用所给短语的适当形式填空）

★In China, people seldom give extra money to waiters…

⑦ **seldom** /'seldəm/ *adv.* 很少；不常

e.g. They seldom go out for dinner. 他们很少到外面用晚餐。

常用的频度副词还有：always > usually > often > sometimes > hardly > never 等。

一般放在实义动词之前，be 动词之后，意为“不常；很少”。

★It's interesting to experience two different cultures.

⑧ **experience** /ɪk'spɪəriəns/ *v.* 体验；经历 *n.* 经验；经历

e.g. He experienced a lot of difficulties in his life.

在他的生活中，他经历了很多困难。

We had never experienced this kind of holiday before and had no idea what to expect.

我们以前从未经历过这种假期，不知道有什么可期待的。

He has a lot of experience in teaching. 他有丰富的教学经验。

He had a scary experience on the trip to Yunnan.

他在去云南旅行的途中，有一段可怕的经历。

① experience 作动词时，可意为“体验；经历”。

② experience 作名词，意为“经验”时，是不可数名词。

③ experience 作名词，意为“经历”时，是可数名词。

考题在线 6 —I don't know how to use the App Fun Dubbing.

—Ask Kitty for help. She has lots of _____ in doing it. [鄂州]

A. expression　B. experiment　C. examination　D. experience

点拨：考查名词辨析。句意：——我不知道如何使用“英语趣配音”这个应用程序。——向 Kitty 寻求帮助吧。她有许多这方面的经验。expression 意为“表达；表情”，既可作可数名词也可作不可数名词；experiment 意为“实验”，是可数名词；examination 意为“考试”，是可数名词；experience 表示“经验”时是不可数名词，表示“经历”时是可数名词。结合语境，此处需要用 experience 表示“经验”。

考题在线答案　1. B　2. B　3. A　4. D　5. to look after/looking after　6. D

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分　☞(答案见181页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成单词

1. T_____he lives alone, he is happy.

2. He can look after the g_____ very well who will visit him.

3. The p_____ of his friends made the boy feel very proud.

4. It's not polite to ask some p_____ questions in the western countries.

5. Different cultures _____ (影响……的发展) different people.

二、单项选择

6. Her mother praised her _____ her bravery as she saved a little boy.

A. of　　B. for

C. about　　D. with

7. —3D printing could be used to build a house in less than 24 hours.

—It _____ amazing. It's my first time to get to know this. [泉州]

A. sounds　　B. smells　　C. tastes

8. It's your turn _____ the game room.

A. use　　B. uses

C. using　　D. to use

9. —Do you often get online?

—Yes.I _____ lots of time on it. It's a good way to kill time. [潍坊改编]

A. cost　　B. spend

C. pay　　D. take

10. Little Tony was happy to get a gift from his friend, _____ the gift was only a card . [抚顺]

A. though　　B. but

C. since　　D. if

三、根据汉语提示完成句子

11. 这张桌子与那张桌子不同。

This desk _____ _____ _____ that one.

12. 我现在不能为这些书付款。

I can't _____ _____ the books now.

13. 让我们轮流打扫这个房间吧。

Let's _____ _____ cleaning the room.

14. 他要求私下见总经理。

He asks to see the managing director _____ _____.

15. 他们两个不是都喜欢踢足球。弟弟喜欢弹钢琴。

_____ _____ of them like playing football. The younger brother likes _____ the piano.



Learners never grow old and struggling makes youth more beautiful.

学习的人永远不老，奋斗的青春最美丽。

宋德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 46 Home to Many Cultures

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

原文译文 · 导读

Pre-reading（读前）

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Why are there different cultures in one country?
  为什么在一个国家会有不同的文化?
- What are some of the cultural differences between different people and places in China?
  在中国，不同的人群和不同的地方有哪些文化差异?

批 体裁：
说明文

批 文章结构：
总分式

While-reading（读中）

- Why is Canada a country with many cultures?
  为什么加拿大是一个拥有许多文化的国家?
- What's the Canadian way of understanding the world?
  加拿大人理解世界的方式是怎样的?

批 考点：
找文章或段落的主题

❶ Canada is home to ① many cultures. Three percent /pə'sent/ ② of all Canadians are First Nations people. The people of the First Nations were there before other people came to North America. Now more than half of Canadians have British or French blood. The rest ③ are from every part of the world: Asia, Africa, Central /'sentrəl/ America, South America, Australia and other European countries.

课文朗读

加拿大是许多文化的故乡。加拿大总人口的 3% 是第一民族人。第一民族的人在其他人来北美之前就在那儿了。现在超过半数的加拿大人拥有英国或法国血统。其余的来自世界各个地方：亚洲、非洲、中美洲、南美洲、澳大利亚和其他欧洲国家。

批 词语欣赏：（加"☞"处）
这几个词语让我们清楚地了解加拿大人口的构成比例。

❷ Canada became a country in 1867, and for more than ④ a hundred years, most immigrants in the country were from Europe. In the 1970s ⑤ and 1980s, that changed. According to ⑥ a survey, the number of European immigrants dropped from 90 percent to 25 percent, and the number of ⑦ Asian immigrants rose from 3 percent to 48 percent.

加拿大于 1867 年成为一个国家，在随后的一百多年里，这个国家的大多数移民者来自欧洲。在二十世纪七八十年代，这种情况有所改变。据调查，欧洲移民的数量从 90% 下降到 25%，而亚洲移民的数量从 3% 上升到 48%。

批 词语欣赏：（加"～"处）
具体数字的多次使用，增强了文章的说服力，使说明更准确。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

❸ Although Canada has two official /əˈfɪʃəl/ languages—English and French, most Canadians do not speak both. Many immigrants speak two languages—the language of their first country and English or French. Canada welcomes cultural differences in the people who live there. 虽然加拿大有两种官方语言——英语和法语，但是大部分加拿大人不是这两种语言都讲。许多移民者讲两种语言——他们的民族语和英语或法语。加拿大乐意接纳住在那儿的人们的文化差异。

批 标点符号：
恰当地使用破折号，起到了解释说明的作用。

❹ So what is a Canadian? That's a little hard to describe. Canada does not have one culture—it has many. It is important that people from different cultures can live together in one country.
那么如何定义加拿大人呢？那就有点难以描述了。加拿大不仅有一种文化——它有许多种。重要的是来自不同文化背景的人们能够一起住在同一个国家里。

批 设问句：
文章结尾通过4个设问句，让读者更加了解加拿大这个国家。

❺ Is there a Canadian food? Not really. Is there a Canadian religion? No. Is there a Canadian kind of music? No again. Is there a Canadian way of understanding the world? Yes. It's that people should respect and accept one another and help one another. It's important to keep different languages, religions and customs /ˈkʌstəmz/ alive[8].
有正宗的加拿大食物吗？其实没有。有加拿大人自己创立的宗教吗？没有。有纯正的加拿大风格的音乐吗？也没有。有加拿大人理解世界的方式吗？有。加拿大人认为人们应该相互尊重、相互包容、相互帮助。说不同的语言、发展不同的宗教、保留不同的风俗习惯都很重要。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（见87页）

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions. 阅读课文并回答问题。

1. What percent of Canadians are from the First Nations? 百分之几的加拿大人来自第一民族？
2. What languages do most immigrants to Canada speak? 大部分到加拿大的移民说什么语言？
3. Why are there many cultures in Canada? 为什么加拿大存在许多文化？
4. What's the Canadian way of understanding the world? 加拿大人理解世界的方式是什么？

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words. 用所给单词的正确形式填空。

1. He came back from _____ (Canada) three years ago, but he keeps in touch with his _____ (Canada) friends.
他三年前从_____（加拿大）回来，但他还和他的_____（加拿大）朋友保持着联系。
2. If you could travel to only one _____ (Europe) country, which one would you choose?
如果你只能去一个 _____（欧洲）国家旅行，你会选择哪个（国家）?
3. He wonders what this means for the future of _____ (Asia) markets.
他想知道这对于 _____（亚洲）市场的未来意味着什么。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. Understanding cultural _____ (difference) is very important for companies involved in international business.
对于有国际业务的公司来说，了解文化的_____（差异）很重要。

5. I'd like to take you to our city's _____ (centre) park.
我想带你去我们城市的_____（中心）公园。

3 Make sentences using the given information. 用所给信息造句。

1. the number of websites/22 in 2009/315 in 2013/the report 网站的数量 /2009 年 22 个 / 2013 年 315 个 / 报道
(rise from...to, according to)（从……上升到……，根据）
The number of websites rose from 22 in 2009 to 315 in 2013, according to the report. →据报道，网站的数量从 2009 年的 22 个上升到 2013 年的 315 个。

2. the price of it/$25 a kilogram in 2003/$250 this year/the research
它的价格 /2003 年每公斤 25 美元 / 今年（每公斤）250 美元 / 调查
(rise from...to, according to)（从……上涨到……，根据）
_____

3. David's weight/150 pounds last month/120 pounds this month/his doctor 戴维的体重 / 上个月 150 磅 / 这个月 120 磅 / 他的医生
(drop from...to, according to)（从……下降到……，根据）
_____

4 Work in groups. List some traditional Chinese customs. Try to find the similarities and differences between Chinese and other cultures. 小组练习。列出一些中国传统的风俗习惯。尽量找出中国文化和其他文化间的相似之处和不同之处。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

East or west, home is the best. 金窝银窝，不如自己的狗窝。

★Canada is home to many cultures.

① **be home to** 是……的家园 / 故乡

e.g. China is home to pandas.
中国是大熊猫的故乡。

Is China the home of pottery?
中国是陶器的发源地吗？

the home of……的发源地 / 发祥地

★Three percent of all Canadians are First Nations people.

② **percent** /pə'sent/ *n.* 百分之……

敲黑板 高频考点，无论前面的数字是多少，percent 不变

e.g. Prices rose by 6 percent last year.
去年，物价上涨了 6%。百分数的表达法：基数词+percent

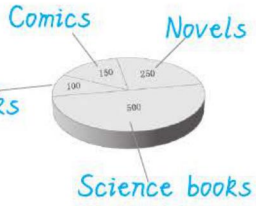
Seventy percent of the rice is from the south.
百分之七十的大米来自南方。

基数词+percent+of+名词（短语）、代词作主语，当名词（短语）、代词为单数（或不可数）时，谓语动词用单数形式；当名词（短语）、代词为复数时，谓语动词用复数形式。

one fifth of..., half of..., the rest of..., most of... 等一些短语作主语时，谓语动词与 of 后面的名词（短语）、代词在数上保持一致。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 We asked 1,000 students from Hope School about what kind of books they love. Here are the results. [东营]



According to the pie chart above, _____ of the students love science books.

A. ten percent B. fifteen percent C. a quarter D. half

★**The rest are from every part of the world:Asia, Africa, Central America, South America, Australia and other European countries.**

③ **rest** /rest/ *n.* 剩余部分；其余的人；其他事物

图解 rest:





所指代的名词不可数时，则谓语动词用单数形式。

所指代的名词为复数时，则谓语动词用复数形式；

【易错点】the rest 在句中作主语时，谓语动词的单复数形式依据它所指代的名词的单复数形式而定。

e.g. These grapes are mine. The rest are yours.
这些葡萄是我的。其余的（葡萄）是你的。
→此处指代 grapes，为名词复数，谓语动词用 are

I have drunk most of the water, and the rest is for you.
我已经喝了大部分的水，剩余的是给你留的。
→此处指代 water，为不可数名词，谓语动词用 is

You can rest your head on my shoulder.
你可以把你的头放在我的肩膀上。
→rest 作动词，意为“安置；放置”

Rest your eyes every half an hour. 每过半小时，让你的眼睛休息一下。
→rest 作动词，意为“休息”

考题在线 2 Twenty workers are from China in our factory, and the rest _____ from other countries.

A. is B. am C. are D. were

★**Canada became a country in 1867, and for more than a hundred years, most immigrants in the country were from Europe.**

④ **more than** 超过；多于；不止
相当于 over，反义短语为 less than。

e.g. I stayed there for more than one week. 我在那儿呆了一周多。
I have known David for more than 20 years.
我已经认识戴维 20 多年了。
Linda was more than a teacher; she also did what she could to take care of her pupils.
琳达不仅仅是位教师，她还尽其所能照顾她的学生们。
They were more than happy to see us come back.
看到我们回来，他们非常高兴。
Their new flat is no more than 60 square metres.
他们的新居仅 60 平方米。
Not more than 10 guests came to her birthday party.

more than 的其他用法：
① more than + 名词（短语），意为“不仅仅是……”。
② more than + 形容词，意为“很，非常”。
③ no more than 仅仅，不过
④ not more than 至多，不超过

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

来参加她生日聚会的客人不超过十人。

考题在线 3 Over twenty people died in the traffic accident.
（选出能代替句中画线部分的一项）
A. Nearly　B. Less than　C. About　D. More than

★**In the 1970s and 1980s, that changed.**

⑤ **in the 1970s 在二十世纪七十年代**

【重点】辨析：in the +年份 s/ 年份 's 与 in +年份

表示“某世纪几十年代”时，要在年份前加 the，在整几十的年份后加“s”或“'s”。

e.g. He was born in the 1830s. 他出生在十九世纪三十年代。
He came to the US in the 1920's. 他在 20 世纪 20 年代来到了美国。
He was born in 1958. 他出生于 1958 年。

① in the +年份 s/ 年份 's 在……世纪……年代
② in+ 年份 在……年

考题在线 4 Thousands of young people went to the countryside to work with the farmers _____.
A. in the 1970'　B. in 1970s　C. in 1970's　D. in the 1970's

★**According to a survey, the number of European immigrants dropped from 90 percent to 25 percent, and the number of Asian immigrants rose from 3 percent to 48 percent.**

⑥ **according to 根据；依照**

e.g. According to these figures, our company is doing well.
从这些数字来看，我们的公司做得不错。
Please arrange the books according to their size.
请按它们的大小整理那些书。
According to John, you were in Canada last week.
据约翰说，你上周在加拿大。
This kind of animals can change their color according to the temperature around.
这种动物可以随着周围温度（的变化）而改变它们的颜色。

according to 的用法：
① 后跟名词（短语）或代词时，一般译为“根据；依照”；
② 后跟人名或书名时，一般译为“根据……的说法 / 看法”；
③ 有时可以译为“随着……（的变化）”。

⑦ **the number of ……的数量**

敲黑板 易混知识点，区别看首单词，the 表数量，单数；a 表许多，复数。

e.g. The number of students in our class is 50.
我们班学生的数量是 50。
The number of homeless people has increased.
无家可归的人数已经增加了。
A number of students are planting trees on the hill.
许多学生正在小山上植树。

辨析：the number of 与 a number of
① the number of……的数量，后跟复数名词作主语时，谓语用单数形式。
② a number of 许多，大量，修饰复数名词，作主语时，谓语用复数形式。

考题在线 5 The number of the elderly（老人）_____ increasing in China, and with the development of China economy, they _____ better care of in the future. [安顺]
A. is; will take　B. are; are taken
C. is; will be taken　D. are; will take

点拨：运用语法判定法。the number of 表示“……的数量”，跟复数名词连用作主语时，中心词是 number，谓语动词要用单数。第二个空提到在将来他们被照顾得更好，因此，用将来时被动语态。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**It's important to keep different languages, religions and customs alive.**

⑧ **alive** /ə'laɪv/ *adj.* 活着；在世

e.g. She was still alive when I reached the hospital.
当我赶到医院的时候她还活着。
The bear was still alive.
这只熊还活着。
Look! A real live elephant.
瞧！一头活生生的大象。
He always makes his class lively.
他总是使他的课堂生动。
She has no living relatives.
她没有活着的亲人。

辨析：alive，live，lively 与 living
① alive 表示"活着的"，与"死去的，逝去的"相对，可以作表语或后置定语
② live 作形容词时，表示"现场直播的；活的"，可以作前置定语。
③ lively 表示"生动的；活泼的"，与"死气沉沉的"相对，可以作定语、表语或宾语补足语
④ living 表示"活着的"，可作前置定语。

考题在线 6 Jim is watching a football match which is shown _____ on TV. Though he is not on the scene, he can still cheer for his team. [常州]
A. lively B. live C. living D. alive

考题在线答案 1. D 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. C 6. B

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见181页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. Thirty _____ (percent) of people have cars. Cars pollute the air, so remember: Use your legs!
2. A number of students in this college _____ (be) foreigners.
3. English is an _____ (office) language in Canada.
4. About 90 percent of most food _____ (be) water.
5. Don't give up. You must keep hopes _____ (alive).

二、单项选择

6. According _____ my watch, it is five o'clock.
A. with B. on C. to D. in
7. The number of the students _____ over 2000 in our school. [六盘水]
A. is B. are C. be D. were
8. The hunter said he was lucky to get out of the forest _____.
A. living B. alive C. lively D. live
9. Miss Li is _____ a writer; she is also a singer.
A. more than B. no more than
C. not more than D. only
10. Some agree with Jim, but the rest of them _____ with Tom.
A. agree B. agrees
C. agreeing D. agreed

三、连词成句

11. we, happily, the, sang, on, way
_____.
12. to, film, Tom, according, the, wonderful, is
_____.
13. our, this, a, group, in, class, is, lively
_____?
14. together, many, people, cultures, live, from
_____.
15. 1980s, they, lived, the, have, there, since
_____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 47 Good Manners

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How do you usually treat① a guest in your home? 你通常在你的家里如何招待客人?
- How are you treated when you visit your friend's house?
  当你到你的朋友家做客时，你是如何被招待的?

Mr. Manners, 礼仪先生:

I'm a Grade 9 student. My Australian pen pal is coming to Beijing next week. I invited② him for dinner at my home, and he accepted③. What should I do to make him feel welcome? How can I be a good host? 我是一名九年级的学生。我的澳大利亚笔友下周将来北京。我邀请他来我家吃饭，他接受了。我应该做些什么让他感到受欢迎呢? 我如何才能成为一位好主人呢?

Li Ming 李明

Dear Li Ming, 亲爱的李明:

A good host always tries to make guests feel welcome. Here are some tips for you.
一位好主人总是尽力让客人感到是受欢迎的。这里有一些给你的建议。

Tidy /'taɪdɪ/④ up your house before your guest arrives.
在你的客人到达之前整理你的房子。

Open the door for your guest and hang up⑤ his coat. It will make him feel welcome. 为你的客人开门并为他挂上外套。这会使他感到受欢迎。

Offer⑥ your guest something to drink or eat like tea, fruit and snacks.
为你的客人提供一些喝的或吃的东西，像茶、水果和小吃。

Don't ask your guest to go to the kitchen and serve himself! Serve your guest at the table.
不要让你的客人到厨房并自己动手! 在餐桌上为你的客人服务。

Make him feel at home. Talk to your guest.That's why you invited him.
让他感觉就像在自己家一样。要和你的客人谈话，那是你邀请他的原因。

Don't turn on⑦ the television. It's OK in China, but it's considered⑧ rude in Western cultures.
不要打开电视。在中国(打开电视)没关系，但在西方文化中，打开电视被认为是粗鲁的。

Mr. Manners 礼仪先生

Mr. Manners, 礼仪先生:

I'm a student visiting Russia. I'm going to stay for three months. One of my classmates invited me to stay overnight at her house. It will be my first time visiting⑨ a Russian /'rʌʃn/⑩ house. What should I do to be a polite guest?
我是一名出访俄罗斯的学生。我将呆三个月。我的一位同班同学邀请我到她家里过夜。这将是我第一次到俄罗斯人的家里。我应该做些什么才能成为一位有礼貌的客人呢?

现在分词短语作后置定语

Dong Fang 东方

Dear Dong Fang, 亲爱的东方:

Here are some small suggestions for you.
这是给你的一些小建议。

Bring a small gift, such as sweets or flowers.
带一份小礼物，例如糖果或花。

Follow the rules of your host's home.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

遵守主人家的规则。

Do what your host asks you to do.

做主人让你做的事情。

Don't be noisy /'nɔɪzi/ , especially at bedtime.

不要吵闹，尤其在睡觉时间。

Offer to help prepare the dinner.

主动帮忙准备正餐。

Write a thank-you note after your visit.

拜访后你要写一封感谢信。

Visiting a local family is a great way to experience another culture. Remember to be yourself and have fun.

拜访当地的家庭是体验另一种文化的一种很好的方式。记得要做真实的自己并玩得开心。

Mr. Manners 礼仪先生

Let's Do It!

做一做！

1 Read the lesson and fill in the table.

阅读课文并填写表格。

Mr. Manner's tips for Li Ming

礼仪先生给李明的建议

Mr. Manner's tips for Dong Fang

礼仪先生给东方的建议

2 Circle the correct words to complete the sentences.

圈出正确的单词完成句子。

1. I said sorry for being too (noisy/noise).
   我为太（吵闹的 / 噪音）而道了歉。
2. The book I read was written in (Russian/Russia).
   我读的这本书是用（俄语 / 俄罗斯）写的。
3. Please (tidy up/divide up) your closet. It's a mess.
   请（整理 / 分配）你的衣橱，它太乱了。
4. Big lights (hung/hanged) from the ceiling. They looked beautiful.
   大灯（挂 / 绞死）在天花板上，它们看起来很漂亮。

3 Imagine you visited a Canadian friend's house yesterday. Write a short letter to your host.

假设昨天你拜访了一位加拿大朋友的家，给你的主人写一封短信。

Task tips：任务提示：

You can thank him for the kind things he did for you. You can also mention some of the cultural differences you experienced in his home.

你可以感谢他为你所做的体贴的事情。你也可以提到在他家所体验到的一些文化差异。

4 Listen and sing along. 听并一起唱。

So We Can Be Friends

以便我们能成为朋友

We welcome you to our home.

我们欢迎你们来到我们家。

You are all our guests.

你们都是我们的客人。

We'd like to offer you some dinner,

我们愿意为你们提供一些正餐，

Then a bed to rest.

然后备好床铺以便休息。

We try to keep our culture.

我们尽力传承我们的文化。

We don't find it strange.

我们没发现它有什么奇怪的。

I would like to learn about your ways,

我想了解你们的风俗习惯，

So we can be friends.

以便我们能成为朋友。

You may find that our home is different from yours. 你们可能会发现我们的家与你们的不一样。

Would you like something to eat or drink?

你们想要一些吃的或喝的吗？

Would you like some more?

你们还想再要些吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点批注　　•考点应用

How do you usually treat a guest in your home?

① **treat** /tri:t/ *v.* 招待，款待；对待；处理

e.g. He treated me well in Beijing.
在北京他很好地招待了我。

Don't treat him like this.
不要像这样对待他。

This is my treat. 这是我请客。

treat 作动词，意为"招待，款待；对待；处理"。
treat 作名词，意为"请客；款待"。
sb.'s treat 某人请客

I invited him for dinner at my home, and he accepted.

② **invite** /ɪn'vaɪt/ *v.* 邀请

e.g. They invited all their friends.
他们邀请了他们所有的朋友。

Did they invite you?
他们邀请你了吗？

We invite them for a drink.
我们邀请他们喝一杯。

They invited us to play the game.
他们邀请我们来玩这个游戏。

I invited Jack to my home.
我邀请杰克来我家。

Thank you for your kind invitation.
谢谢你的盛情邀请。

invite 的用法：
① invite sb. 邀请某人
② invite sb. for sth. 为某事而邀请某人
③ invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事
④ invite sb. to sp. 邀请某人去某地

invite 的名词形式为 invitation，意为"邀请"。

考题在线 1 Thanks for inviting _____ to your food festival. We really enjoyed ourselves. [随州]

A. we　　B. they
C. them　　D. us

点拨：考查代词辨析。句意：谢谢你邀请我们参加你们的食品节。我们玩得非常高兴。结合下文的 We 可知邀请的是"我们"，动词 invite 后要跟宾格形式。

③ **accept** /ək'sept/ *v.* 接受；承认

e.g. Please accept our sincere apologies.
请接受我们真诚的道歉。

Jenny has accepted Tom's invitation.
詹妮接受了汤姆的邀请。

I received a gift from Mike, I was so happy.
我收到了一份来自迈克的礼物，我很高兴。

accept 的近义词为 receive，反义词为 refuse。

辨析：accept 与 receive
accept 作动词，意为"接受；收下"。
receive 作动词，意为"收到"，但不一定收下。

知识微课

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

一语辨异：I received his invitation, but I didn't accept it.
我收到了他的请帖，但我没有接受它。

考题在线 2 I didn't mean to trouble Curry yesterday. It was pouring with rain so I _____ his offer of a lift. [武汉]
A. refused B. received C. allowed D. accepted

点拨：采用词语辨析法。句意：我昨天没打算去麻烦 Curry。昨天下倾盆大雨，所以我接受了他搭车的提议。refuse 拒绝；receive 收到；allow 允许；accept 接受。

★Tidy up your house before your guest arrives.

④ **tidy** /'taɪdɪ/ *v.* 使整洁；使整齐 *adj.* 整洁的；整齐的

tidy →  mess → 

tidy up 收拾；整理，当宾语是名词（短语）时，放在 tidy 和 up 之间，或 up 之后都可以；当宾语是代词时，要放在两者之间。

e.g. You'd better tidy up things before the guests arrive.
客人到达前，你最好把东西整理一下。
His room is in a mess so I have to tidy it up.
他的房间乱七八糟的，因此我不得不整理一下它。
Her clothes were clean and tidy. 她的衣服干净又整洁。

tidy 还可作形容词，意为"整洁的；整齐的"。

常见有关 tidy 的短语：tidy away 收拾起来

考题在线 3 The little boy is always keeping his bedroom clean and t_____ (整齐的). [安徽]

点拨：句意：这个小男孩总是把他的卧室收拾得干净而整洁。"keep sth. + *adj.*" 是固定结构，再根据语境和首字母提示可知答案。

核心素养之文化意识

养成整洁卫生的习惯

◆ 好的习惯是影响孩子一生的，同学们要从小养成整洁卫生的习惯。一个整洁干净的人给人以干练、有修养(*cultured*)、办事有条不紊的感觉，要养成整洁的习惯。

◆ 【素养行动】我们应从小事做起，将教室、卧室内物品摆放整齐；保持衣服整洁，不随地吐痰(*spit*)；保持环境卫生，不随手扔垃圾(*rubbish*)；不在墙壁上、桌上、门窗上乱写乱画等。

◆ 【素养行动结果】养成整洁卫生的习惯，提升综合素养。

★Open the door for your guest and hang up his coat.

⑤ **hang up** 挂起；挂断电话

hang up 后可接宾语，但当宾语为代词时，需放在 hang 和 up 中间；当宾语为名词（短语）时，名词（短语）可位于 hang 与 up 之间，也可放在 hang up 的后面。

e.g. I have hung up my coat. 我已经挂起了我的外套。
Don't hang up. We must have a talk.
不要挂电话，我们必须得谈谈。
She hung up her clothes on the line. = She hung her clothes up on the line. 她把她的衣服挂在了绳上。
My uncle hung it up on the wall. 我叔叔把它挂在了墙上。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

hang 的过去式和过去分词有两种，但是表示的意义不同。

She hung her dress up on the hook.
她把她的连衣裙挂在了衣钩上。

hang 的意义：
① hung-hung-hung 悬挂；吊着
② hang-hanged-hanged 绞死

The robber was hanged yesterday.
那个盗贼昨天被施以绞刑。

★Offer your guest something to drink or eat like tea, fruit and snacks.

offer 后面可以跟名词（短语）或代词作宾语，也可以跟双宾语。

⑥ **offer** /'ɒfə(r)/ *v.* 提供；供应

e.g. They decide to offer Joe the job.
他们决定给乔提供这份工作。

offer sb. sth. = offer sth. to sb. 给某人提供某物
offer to do sth. 主动提出做某事
offer up...to... 奉献；祭献
offer one's hand 伸出某人的手

She offered to carry the box. 她主动提出要搬那个箱子。

He offered up his life to his country.
他把他的生命献给了他的祖国。

He came towards me and offered his hand.
他向我走来并伸出他的手。

考题在线 4 —Jack _____ to help at the underground station on Saturdays.
—Cool! Let's join him next Saturday. [深圳]
A. offers B. refuses C. forgets

点拨：句意：——杰克每周六主动到地铁站帮忙（做义工）。——太棒了，下周六让我们也加入吧。A 选项表示“主动提供”；B 选项表示“拒绝”；C 选项表示“忘记；遗忘”。

★Don't turn on the television.

turn 短语
① turn off 关上
② turn down 关小
③ turn up 调大

⑦ **turn on 打开；接通（电流、煤气、水等）**

e.g. Please turn on the radio.
请把收音机打开。

【易错点】类似的短语及例句

e.g. Don't forget to turn off the computer.
不要忘记关电脑。

It's too noisy. Turn it down.
太吵了，把它关小点儿（声音）。

I can't hear it clearly. Turn it up.
我听不清，把它开大点（声音）。



认真会有收获

考题在线 5 —I'd like to buy a new oven.
—The ones over there sell well. You can _____ one by one to have a try. [乌鲁木齐]
A. turn on it B. turn it on
C. turn on them D. turn them on

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：考查动词短语用法。句意：——我想要买一个新烤箱。——那边的那些卖得很好。你可以一个个地打开试试。turn on 意为“打开”，是“动词 + 副词”结构的短语，宾语为代词时必须放在 turn 和 on 两者之间；由前一个句子提到的 The ones over there“那边的那些”为复数，因此下文中用 them“它们”来代替。

★It's OK in China, but it's considered rude in Western cultures.

⑧ **consider** /kən'sɪdə(r)/ *v.* 考虑

e.g. My father is considering changing a job.
我父亲正在考虑换一份工作。

consider 常用的固定搭配有：consider doing 意为“考虑做某事”；

John is considered (to be) my good friend. = I consider John as my good friend.
我把约翰当成我的好朋友。

be considered (to be) + adj./n. 意为“被当成是……”；consider...as... 意为“把……当成……”。

考题在线 6 —I'm considering _____ abroad for further study, but I haven't decided yet.
—You'd better ask your English teacher for some advice.
[哈尔滨]

A. going　　B. to go　　C. go



点拨：句意：——我正在考虑出国进一步学习，但是我还没有决定。
——你最好咨询一下你英语老师的建议。
consider doing sth. 考虑做某事。

★It will be my first time visiting a Russian house.

⑨ **【重点】It + be + my first time doing sth.** 这是我第一次做某事

e.g. It will be my first time to be a babysitter.
这将是我第一次做临时保姆。

It is /was / will be the/one's first time doing sth. / to do sth. 为固定句式。

It is /was / will be the/one's first time 后还可跟句子。当为 It is /will be… 时，后面时态通常用现在完成时；当为 It was… 时，后面时态通常用过去完成时。而且句式中的 first 可用其他的序数词来替换，time 可用其他的名词来替换。

e.g. It is the third apple (that) I have had.
它是我吃的第三个苹果。

用现在完成时

⑩ **Russian** /'rʌʃn/ *adj.* relating to Russia, its people, or its language 俄罗斯的 *n.* 俄罗斯人；俄语

Russian 可以用作形容词，意为“俄罗斯的”，还可以用作名词，意为“俄罗斯人；俄语”，其复数形式为 Russians.

e.g. The professor is reading a Russian novel.
那位教授正在读一本俄语小说。

We ask him whether Russians like golf or not.
我们问他俄罗斯人是否喜欢（打）高尔夫球。

考题在线答案　1. D　2. D　3. tidy　4. A　5. D　6. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见182页)

一、用方框中所给词的正确形式填空

offer, noise, Russia, tidy, accept

1. Please _____ away the dolls before you leave the room.
2. Your application (申请) won't be _____ until you complete the survey.
3. We must tell him not to be _____. The students are having classes.
4. They _____ 500 *yuan* for this red horse.
5. He is one of the teachers who know _____ well.

二、单项选择

6. It's necessary for us_____ English well. [怀化]

   A. to learn　　B. learning
   C. learn

7. His family are worried about him because they haven't _____ letters from him for a long time.

   A. accepted　　B. received
   C. written　　D. collected

8. _____ your house before your guest arrives.

   A. Tidy of　　B. Tidy for
   C. Tidy to　　D. Tidy up

9. —Jim, it's dark now. Please _____ the light in the room.
   —OK, Mum. [新疆]

   A. turn on　　B. turn up
   C. turn off　　D. turn down

10. Danny didn't go to the party, because he _____.

    A. didn't invite　　B. aren't invited
    C. isn't invited　　D. wasn't invited

三、根据汉语提示完成句子

11. 谢谢 (你) 邀请我来参加你的生日聚会。
    Thanks for _____ me _____ _____ _____ _____ your birthday party.
12. 我们搬进去之前应该把那个地方收拾一下。
    We should _____ _____ the place before we move in.
13. 这将是我第一次出国。
    It will be _____ _____ _____ going abroad.
14. 主席邀请我发表意见。
    The chairman _____ me _____ give my opinion.
15. 我发现与外国人交流很难。我该做些什么呢?
    I found _____ very hard _____ _____with foreigners. What should I do?



A good book is a good friend.
好书如挚友。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 48 Supper with the Bradshaws

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How do you react when you receive a gift you don't like?
  当你收到一份你不喜欢的礼物时，你会有什么样的反应?
- When your family visits another, what do you usually take as a gift?
  当你的家庭去拜访另一个家庭时，你们通常会带什么作为礼物?

课文朗读

Dear Danny, 亲爱的丹尼:

How are you these days? Are you ready for ① Christmas?

近来好吗? 你为圣诞节做好准备了吗?

My Australian pen pal, Bruce, and his father, came to visit me the day before yesterday. Last night, my parents invited them to our home for dinner. At the end of ② the meal, Mr. Bradshaw opened a box of cookies he had brought from home. He then passed the box to everyone. We each ③ took a cookie and ate it. The cookie tasted like chalk /tʃɔːk/ to me! But in good Chinese tradition /trəˈdɪʃn/, I told Mr. Bradshaw that I enjoyed it.

我的澳大利亚笔友布鲁斯和他的父亲前天来拜访我。昨天晚上，我的父母邀请他们到我们家吃饭。当晚饭结束时，布莱德肖先生打开了一盒他从家里带来的饼干。然后他把饼干盒递给(我们)每个人。我们每个人都拿了一块饼干并吃了起来。对我来说，这种饼干尝起来就像粉笔一样! 但是由于良好的中国传统，我告诉布莱德肖先生我很喜欢它。

At the airport today, Mr. Bradshaw gave me a big box of the same cookies as a gift. I don't know what we'll do with ④ them.

今天在机场，布莱德肖先生送给我一大盒同样的饼干作为礼物。我不知道我们将如何处理它们。

Merry Christmas and Happy New Year!

圣诞快乐! 新年快乐!

Li Ming 李明

Hi Li Ming, 你好，李明:

I am so busy with ⑤ Christmas these days.

这些天我一直忙着准备圣诞节。

I couldn't help but ⑥ laugh when I read your e-mail. I can imagine your reaction /rɪˈækʃn/ when you received the cookies. Maybe ⑦ you can send ⑧ them to me. I love all kinds of cookies. But I think you were polite to react /rɪːˈækt/ that way. I love Chinese culture. I wish everyone here, especially ⑨ Debbie, could learn some Chinese manners.

当我读到你的电子邮件时，我忍不住笑了起来。我可以想象当你收到饼干时的反应。也许你可以把它们寄给我。我喜爱各种各样的饼干。但是我觉得你做出那样的反应是有礼貌的。我喜欢中国文化。我希望这里的每个人，尤其是黛比，能学习一些中国礼仪。

Debbie dreams of ⑩ being a police officer /ˈɒfɪsə/. She once said that she hoped to have a toy gun /gʌn/ as a Christmas gift, so I bought one for her. But when I gave it to her, she said she wanted a doll /dɒl/! She changes her mind so quickly! 黛比梦想着成为一名警察。她曾经说过她希望有一支玩具枪作为圣诞礼物，所以我给她买了一支。但是当我把玩具枪给她时，她说她想要一个洋娃娃! 她这么快就改变了她的主意!

Though I was a little hurt, I still enjoyed Christmas very much. We had a lot of fun. We

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

are planning another trip to Chinatown during the Spring Festival.I love festivals.

虽然我有一点伤心，但是我仍然很喜欢圣诞节。我们玩得很开心。我们正在计划春节期间到唐人街的另一次旅行。我喜欢节日。

Danny 丹尼

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文，并写正确(T)或错误(F)。

1. Li Ming liked Mr. Bradshaw's cookies.
   李明喜欢布莱德肖先生的饼干。 (　　)
2. Li Ming accepted Mr.Bradshaw's gift although he didn't like it.
   尽管李明不喜欢布莱德肖先生的礼物，但他还是接受了。 (　　)
3. Debbie liked the toy gun that Danny gave her as a Christmas gift. 黛比喜欢丹尼送给她作为圣诞礼物的玩具枪。 (　　)
4. Danny is planning another trip to Chinatown.
   丹尼正在计划去唐人街的另一次旅行。 (　　)

2 Complete the passage with the correct forms of the words in the box.
用方框中所给单词的正确形式完成短文。

officer 官员　gun 枪　praise 赞扬 catch 抓住　react 反应

There was a robbery yesterday afternoon. Two men rushed into the City Bank with _____ in their hands. All the people were scared except a smart clerk. She _____ quickly and pushed the alarm immediately. Soon the robbers _____ by the police _____. Luckily, there was no loss or injuries. This clerk _____ by the mayor. 昨天下午发生了一起抢劫案。两个男人手持 _____ 冲进了城市银行。除了一位聪明的职员外，所有人都被吓坏了。她 _____ 很快，马上摁响警报。很快劫匪被警方 _____ _____。幸运的是，没有任何损失和伤害。这位职员受到了市长 _____。

3 Let's do a quick quiz!
让咱们做一个快速测试！

You know about Santa Claus, don't you? He's that man in red clothes. He has a long, white beard.He wears black boots. He says, "Ho! Ho! Ho! " He and Christmas go together. Over the years, the stories about Santa Claus have grown. He has an address, a special type of transportation and a special way to get into children's houses. Do you know what they are? Let's do a quiz! 你知道圣诞老人，不是吗？他就是那个穿红衣服的男人。他留着长长的白胡子，穿着黑色的靴子，他嘴里说着"嗬！嗬！嗬！"他和圣诞节一起到来。多少年来，关于圣诞老人的故事一直在发展。他有一个地址，有一种特殊的交通方式，还有一种进入孩子们房间的特殊方式。你知道它们是什么吗？让咱们做一个测试吧！

1. Where does Santa Claus live?
   圣诞老人住在哪里？
2. Santa rides in a sleigh. What animals pull his sleigh?
   圣诞老人坐着雪橇。什么动物拉着他的雪橇？
3. Children believe that Santa visits them on Christmas Eve. How does he get into their houses?
   孩子们相信圣诞老人会在圣诞前夕看望他们。他是如何进入他们的房子里的？

1. It is said that Santa Claus lives at the North Pole.
   据说圣诞老人住在北极。
2. Reindeer pull Santa's sleigh.
   驯鹿拉着圣诞老人的雪橇。
3. Santa comes down the chimney. When he leaves, he goes up the chimney.
   圣诞老人从烟囱下来。当他离开时，他从烟囱上去。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★Are you ready for Christmas?

辨析：be ready for 与 get ready for
- be ready for 着重表示"准备好了"这一状态
- get ready for 着重表示"做准备"这一动作

① be ready for 为……做好准备

e.g. We are ready for the journey.
我们为旅行做好了准备。

They are ready for the competition.
他们为比赛做好了准备。

We must get ready for it. 我们必须为它做好准备。

They are ready to hear the news.
他们准备好听那个消息了。

be ready to do sth. 准备做某事

★At the end of the meal, Mr. Bradshaw opened a box of cookies he had brought from home.

辨析：at the end of, by the end of 与 in the end
① at the end of 后面可跟表示时间或地点的名词(短语)，表示"在……末端"。
② by the end of 后面多接表示时间的名词(短语)，表示"到……为止"，常用于过去完成时或一般将来时的句子中。
③ in the end 与"at last"基本同义，表示"终于，最后"，通常用于过去时。

② at the end of 在……末端；在……尽头

e.g. We will have an English exam at the end of January.
一月底我们将有一次英语考试。

At the end of the road you can find a big white house.
在这条马路的尽头你能找到一幢大的白房子。

By the end of last week I had written two books.
到上周末，我已经写了两本书了。

In the end he passed the final exam.
他最终通过了期末考试。

考题在线1 Our school held a sports meeting _____ last year.

A. at the end of　　B. by the end of

C. in the end　　D. in the end of

点拨：本题用正确把握语境法。at the end of 在……末端，在……尽头；by the end of 到……为止；in the end 最终，最后，不可与 of 连用。句意：去年年末我校举行了一次运动会。

★We each took a cookie and ate it.

each 的用法：
① each 在句中作主语的同位语，此时谓语要用复数形式。
② each 独立作主语时，谓语要用单数形式。
③ each of... 短语作主语时，谓语用单数形式。

③ each /iːtʃ/ *adj.* 每；各自的；*adv.* 每个；各自；*pron.* 每个；各自

e.g. They each have received a letter from America.
他们每人收到了一封来自美国的信。

Each agrees with me.
每个人都同意我的意见。

Each of them is to pay his own fine.
他们将各自付自己的罚款。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



嘴上说着“看淡”、“认命”，心里却执拗着“加油啊，千万别放弃！”

辨析：each 与 every

	each	every
不同点	each 所修饰词的数量大于或等于 2，each 可单独使用。	every 所修饰词的数量大于或等于 3，every 不可单独使用。
共同点	each 和 every 都可修饰可数名词的单数，谓语用单数形式。	

考题在线 2 —There're four bedrooms in the house, _____ with its own shower.

—That's what I want. I've got a few kids. [武汉]

A. either　　B. neither

C. each　　D. none

点拨：考查代词辨析。句意：——房子里有四个卧室，每个都带有各自的淋浴。——那正是我想要的。我有好几个孩子。either 表示“两个中的任何一个”，neither 表示“(两个)都不”，each 表示“两个或两个以上中的每一个”，none 表示“没有一个”。

★I don't know what we'll do with them.

④ **do with 对待；处理；容忍**

辨析：do with 与 deal with
① do with 表示“处理”时，常与 what 连用。
② deal with 表示“处理”时，常与 how 连用。

e.g. What will you do with these imported goods?

你将如何处理这些进口货物？

He didn't know what to do with the property.

他不知道怎么处理这些财产。

How are you going to deal with the problem?

你们打算如何处理这个问题呢？

① do with 与 can 或 could 连用时，意为“想要；需要”。
② do with 用在否定句中，意为“容忍，忍受”。

I could do with some cookies.

我想吃一些饼干。

I can't do with your loud voice.

我忍受不了你的大嗓门。

考题在线 3 将下面句子译成英语，必须用上所给的提示短语。

他给了我一些关于怎么处理这个问题的建议。(do with)

_____

★I am so busy with Christmas these days.

⑤ **be busy with 忙于……**

e.g. I was busy with my children.

我忙于(照顾)我的孩子们。

He is busy with his homework.=He is busy doing his homework.

他正忙着做他的家庭作业。

“忙于做某事”还可以用 be busy doing sth. 及 busy oneself with... 表达，这几种表示“忙于做某事”的结构可以互换。

考题在线 4 根据首字母及汉语提示，完成下列单词的拼写。

My grandparents are b_____ (忙碌) making *zongzi* for the Dragon Boat Festival. [安徽]

点拨：句意：我的祖父母正在忙着为端午节包粽子。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★I couldn't help but laugh when I read your e-mail.

⑥ **can't help but** 不得不；忍不住 can't help but 后要跟不带 to 的不定式，其过去式为：couldn't help but do sth.。

e.g. You can't help but respect them. 你不得不尊敬他们。

We couldn't help but laugh. 我们忍不住笑了。

She couldn't help crying when she saw her mother coming.

=She couldn't help but cry when she saw her mother coming.

当她看到她母亲到来的时候，禁不住哭了起来。

can't help but do sth. = can't help doing sth. 忍不住做某事；情不自禁做某事

考题在线 5 I couldn't help _____ when I heard the funny story.

A. but laugh　　B. to laugh

C. laugh　　D. laughs

点拨：can't help but do sth. 意为"情不自禁做某事"，根据句意"当我听到这个滑稽的故事时，我忍不住笑了起来。"可知答案。

★Maybe you can send them to me.

⑦ **maybe** /'meɪbi/ *adv.* 也许；可能；大概

e.g. Maybe you'll have better luck next time.

也许你下次的运气会好点。

He may be an artist. 他可能是位画家。

辨析：maybe 与 may be

① maybe 是副词，与 perhaps 和 probably 的意思相同。在句中作状语，一般置于句首。

② may be 是"情态动词 may+ 动词原形 be"的结构，在句中作谓语，意为"可能是"。

⑧ **send** /send/ *vt.* 发送，寄；派遣；使进入；发射 *vi.* 派人；送信

e.g. My penfriend sent me a beautiful card as a present on my birthday.

=My penfriend sent a beautiful card as a present to me on my birthday.

send sth. to sb. = send sb. sth. 寄给某人某物

在我生日时，我的笔友送给我一张美丽的卡片作为礼物。

与 send 有关的短语：send for 派人去请；send up 使向上移动；send away 发送掉，使离去；send after 派人寻找。

★I wish everyone here, especially Debbie, could learn some Chinese manners.

⑨ **especially** /ɪ'speʃəli/ *adv.* 特别；尤其；格外

辨析：especially 与 specially

① especially 意为"尤其，特别"，指同类中特指的一个或一些。

② specially 意为"专门，特意"，常用结构为：specially to do sth.。

e.g. There are some students playing in the classroom, especially the boys. 有些学生在教室里玩耍，特别是男生。

I came specially to see you.

我特意来看你。

考题在线 6 —As we know, it's very difficult to live in a foreign country like the UK, the US and so on.

—I agree. _____ , if you don't understand the local language.

[达州]

A. Especially　　B. Generally　　C. Naturally　　D. Exactly

点拨：考查副词辨析。由上文"正如我们所知道的，在英国、美国等这样的外国生活是很难的。"可知"尤其是你不懂当地语言就更难了"。

especially 尤其，特别；generally 通常地；naturally 自然地；exactly 确切地。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**Debbie dreams of being a police officer.**

⑩ **dream of 梦想；梦见**

dream of 后接名词（短语）、代词或动名词（短语）等作宾语。

dream of { 想到 / 梦到 / 向往；渴望 }

e.g. I dream of becoming a teacher. 我梦想着成为一名教师。

I shouldn't dream of doing such a thing. 我不应该梦想做这样一件事。

I never dreamed of meeting you here. 我从未想过会在这里遇见你。

She dreamed of her hometown last night. 她昨晚梦到了她的家乡。

He dreams of wealth and happiness. 他渴望富有和幸福。

考题在线 7 When I was a child, I _____ a manager in a big company in the future.

A. dreamed of being　　B. dream of being

C. dream about　　D. dream to be

点拨：句意：当我还是个孩子的时候，我梦想在将来成为一个大公司的经理。dream of doing sth. 意为“梦想做某事”。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. C　3. He gave me some suggestions about what to do with the problem.　4. busy　5. A　6. A　7. A

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见182页）

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成单词

1. He shot a wolf with his g_____.
2. The teacher wrote some sentences with some c_____ on the blackboard.
3. The police o_____ asked to see my license.
4. I shouted at her, but she didn't r_____ at all.
5. It is good Chinese t_____ to respect the old and look after the young.

二、单项选择

6. The match was really fantastic, _____ when Jack scored in the last minute.

A. probably　　B. exactly

C. especially　　D. specially

7. The workers are busy _____ windows to the new building these days. [上海]

A. fix　　B. fixed　　C. fixing　　D. to fix

8. We couldn't help _____ when Uncle Wang told us the news.

A. laugh　　B. laughed

C. laughing　　D. to laugh

9. Her mother has a pain in the stomach. So she has _____ a doctor.

A. sent up　　B. sent for

C. sent away　　D. sent out

10. —Have you got anything to do this afternoon, boys and girls?

—Yes. _____ of us is going to the park.

A. Both　B. Every　C. Each　D. All

三、连词成句

11. for, are, song, ready, sing, a, us, to, you

_____?

12. worked, of, more, us, has, for, than, ten, each, hours

_____.

13. has, Beijing, he, to, maybe, gone

_____.

14. you, the, with, are, Spring, busy, Festival

_____?

15. he, her, dreams, coming, never, of

_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary 构建你的词汇库

Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box.

用方框中所给单词的正确形式填空。

human 人 gun 枪 private 私人的 tidy 整理 chalk 粉笔 hang 挂；吊 rule 规定 praise 称赞

1. _____ cannot be owned or carried in many countries. 在许多国家，_____ 不能被（私人）拥有和携带。
2. Though personal letters are _____, some parents open their children's letters.
   尽管个人信件是 _____，但是一些父母会打开他们孩子的信件。
3. In some public places, there are _____ against making any noise. 在一些公共场所，有禁止制造任何噪音的 _____。
4. The mother _____ her kid for _____ the table after the meal. 妈妈 _____ 她的孩子，因为饭后（孩子）_____ 餐桌。
5. _____ can make tools, but animals can't. _____ 可以制造工具，而动物不能。
6. The teacher drew a horse on the blackboard with _____.
   那位老师用_____ 在黑板上画了一匹马。
7. The branches of the trees along the river _____ down and touched the water.
   沿着河的树枝 _____ 来，碰到了水面。

Grammar in Use 语法应用

Combine the sentences with "though" or "although". 用"though"或"although"连接句子。

1. It's late. The teacher is still working in his office. 天很晚了。那位老师仍然在他的办公室工作。
2. It's blowing hard. They will go out to repair the street lamps.
   风刮得很大。他们将要出去修理路灯。
3. He didn't know the poor old man.He bought lunch for him.
   他不认识这位可怜的老人。他为他买午餐。
4. He made a serious mistake.His parents finally forgave him.
   他犯了一个严重的错误。他的父母最终原谅了他。
5. Bill is dead. He will be remembered by his friends. 比尔死了。他将被他的朋友们缅怀。

Listening and Speaking 听说训练

Ⅰ. Listen to the passage and fill in the blanks.

听短文并填空。



1. In Western countries, people usually have _____ names.
   在西方国家，人们通常有 _____ 名字。
2. Brian James Smith is Brian's _____ name.
   布赖恩·詹姆斯·史密斯是布赖恩的 _____ 名。
3. In Western countries, people talk about their "_____", "_____" and "_____" names. 在西方国家，人们谈论他们的"_____"、"_____"和"_____"名。
4. In Western countries, people usually call a person's _____ name.
   在西方国家，人们通常叫一个人的 _____ 名。

Ⅱ. Imagine that a Canadian friend comes to visit your house. What should you do to make him or her feel comfortable? Make up a dialogue with your partner and act it out.

想象一下一个加拿大朋友要来拜访你家。你应该做些什么才能让他或她感到舒适？和你的搭档编一

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

段对话并把它表演出来。

Putting It All Together 综合训练

Read the passage and follow the instructions.

阅读短文并遵循指令。

Table Manners

餐桌礼仪

All societies have customs about how to eat politely. In English, we call these customs "table manners". Based on culture and location, table manners can be quite different from place to place. It's very interesting! Here are some examples:

所有的社会都有关于如何礼貌用餐的风俗习惯。在英语中，我们称这些风俗习惯为"餐桌礼仪"。基于文化和地点，餐桌礼仪在不同的地方会有很大的不同。这非常有趣！这里是一些例子：

• In some cultures, it's polite to serve food to guests, while in other cultures, people don't do this because it makes the guests feel like they are being forced to eat.

在一些文化中，为客人夹菜是有礼貌的。然而在其他文化中，人们不会这样做，因为这会让客人感觉他们正在被强迫用餐。

• In most East Asian countries, people use chopsticks at the table. In Western countries, people usually eat with a knife and a fork. Do you know that in some places people simply use their hands to eat? And in some places, only their right hand?

在大部分东亚国家，人们在餐桌上使用筷子。在西方国家，人们通常用刀和叉吃饭。你知道在一些地方人们仅仅用他们的双手来吃饭吗？而在一些地方，人们仅用他们的右手来用餐吗？

• In Russia, it's polite to leave a bit of food on your plate to show the host that there was plenty to eat. But in India, finishing the food on your plate is considered polite. It means you enjoyed the food. 在俄罗斯，在你的盘子里留一点食物来告诉主人你还有很多食物可吃是有礼貌的。但是在印度，把你盘子里的食物吃完被认为是有礼貌的。这意味着你喜欢这食物。

Throughout the world, you will find many different table manners and customs. So when you visit another place or another country, take the time to learn the local customs and manners. Remember, "When in Rome, do as the Romans do".

在全世界，你将发现许多不同的餐桌礼仪和风俗习惯。所以当你到另一个地方或另一个国家参观时，要花时间来了解当地的风俗和礼仪。记住"入乡随俗"。

What are some good manners in your hometown? What else do you know about table manners? Write about it.

你的家乡有一些什么好的礼仪？你还知道其他的餐桌礼仪吗？把它写出来。

Example：例子：

• In my hometown, it's polite to serve food to our guests.

在我的家乡，为我们的客人夹菜是有礼貌的。

• It's rude to put your elbows on the table in my city.

在我的城市，把你的手肘放在桌子上是不礼貌的。

• Talking when you have food in your mouth is really rude.

当你的嘴里有食物时说话是很粗鲁的。

• It's not polite to use a toothpick at the table.

在餐桌上用牙签是不礼貌的。

Self-Evaluation 自我评价

Find more examples from this unit. Then mark your stars.

从本单元找出更多的例子。然后评出你的星级。

I. Talking about Cultural Differences

讨论文化不同

I think understanding cultural differences really helps us to understand each other, live together and work together.

未经许可

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

我觉得了解文化差异十分有助于我们互相理解、共同生活和一起工作。

I know how to express cultural differences in English. 我知道如何用英语表达文化差异。

Ⅱ. Adverbial Clause with "though"or "although"

"though" 或 "although" 引导的状语从句

Though I was a little hurt, I still enjoyed Christmas very much.

尽管我有点伤心，但我仍非常喜欢圣诞节。

I can use "though" and "although" properly.

我可以恰当地使用 "though" 和 "although"。

Where I Come From

在我来自的地方

I come from a foreign country.
我来自外国。
I am so much different from you.
我与你如此不同。
So if I make
所以如果我犯了
A cultural mistake,
一个文化错误，
Would you please tell me what to do?
请你告诉我（应该）做什么，好吗?
Where I come from, we shake hands in greeting,
在我来自的地方，我们握手问候，
And ask, "How are you? " 并问："你好吗？"
We say "please" and "thank you "
我们说"请"和"谢谢你"
During a meeting
在会议期间，
And forgive a mistake or two.
并且原谅一两个错误。
What's one of the special customs
你的社会喜欢用的
Your society likes to use?
一种特殊的风俗习惯是什么?
Something you say
一些
To your friends each day
你每天都和你的朋友们说的事
That you could teach me, too?
你也可以教给我吗?

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

though 和 although 引导的让步状语从句

考点1 though 和 although 的用法

考向一：though 和 although 都可表示"虽然"，引导让步状语从句，二者都可以与 yet, still 等连用，但不能与 but 连用。

e.g. Though/Although he is very old, he is still very strong.
他虽然年纪很大了，但身体还很健壮。

考题在线1 _____ my grandpa is over 80 years old, he still looks strong and healthy. [菏泽]

A. Although B. Because C. Unless

点拨：考查状语从句之从属连词。although 尽管，引导让步状语从句；because 因为，引导原因状语从句；unless 除非，引导条件状语从句。根据选项推测句意：尽管我祖父 80 多岁了，但他看起来仍然强壮健康。

考向二：although 引导的让步状语从句位于主句之前的情况较多；though 引导的让步状语从句可位于主句之前或主句之后。

e.g. Although /Though she has lots of money, she is unhappy.
她虽然有很多钱，但是却不幸福。
She passed the examination though she had not studied very hard.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

她虽然没很用功地学习，但她却通过了考试。

考题在线 2 A recent survey shows that 44 percent of Americans want to use self-driving cars, _____ 34 percent believe that they will make the roads more dangerous. [临沂]

A. although

B. because

C. if

点拨：考查连词的用法。句意：最近的一项调查显示，44% 的美国人希望使用自动驾驶汽车，尽管 34% 的人认为这将使道路更加危险。although“尽管；虽然”；because“因为”；if“如果”。由句意可知前后句表示让步关系。

考题在线 3 _____ Mr. Smith has learned Chinese for only half a year, he can speak it very well. [贵港]

A. But　　B. So

C. Although　　D. And

考向三：though 和 although 均可用于省略句中，通常见于主句与从句的主语相同，且从句谓语有动词 be 的情形。

e.g. Although/Though (it is) small, the kitchen is well designed.
厨房虽小，但设计巧妙。

考点 2 辨析：though 与 although

辨析：

- though 可用于 even though, as though 短语中，although 则不能。
- although 只用作连词，而 though 还可以独立用作副词，常放在句末，意为“然而，可是”。
- 当让步状语从句表示某种假设情况时，通常用 though，而不用 although。
- though 引导的让步状语从句可用部分倒装，但 although 不能。

e.g. I'll get there, even though I have to walk.
我就是走也要走到那儿去。

She didn't tell me what she had done. I knew it, though.
她没有告诉我她所做的事情，但我还是知道了。

Child though he was, he did quite well.
他虽然是个孩子，但他干得很好。

Though they all may fail, they all will try.
即使他们可能都会失败，他们所有人都愿意试一试。

考题在线 4 He could find the way home _____ he was only three years old. [重庆 A]

A. though　　B. because

C. where　　D. if

考题在线答案 1. A　2. A　3. C　4. A

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见182 页)

听力技巧

五边处理法（即边听，边理解，边复述，边做笔记，边猜测判断。利用有效途径，在较短时间内强记重要的信息。）

听力过程

听本课中 Listening and Speaking Ⅰ 完成以下习题

课文听力

1. In Western countries, people usually have _____ names.
2. _____, Brian's _____ name is Brian James Smith.
3. In Western countries, people usually do not say another person's _____ name.
4. They usually call someone by his or her _____ name.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

The passage is about Canada. It is home to many cultures. People in Canada are from every part of the world. Only three percent of all Canadians are First Nations people. Canada has two official languages —English and French. Canada welcomes cultural differences. The Canadian way of understanding the world is that people should respect and accept one another and help one another.

交代 what

上边画"^"的2处，使用了"加拿大人"的两种表达。

单元话题

同学们，在本课的阅读中我们了解到一些有关西方饮食文化的有趣知识。现在某国外旅游杂志向你约稿，请你以 When in China, do as the Chinese do! 为题写一篇文章，向西方读者介绍我们中国的饮食文化。以下是此杂志社发来的稿件要求，请仔细阅读，完成写作。

☆ Length(词数): About 80 words.

☆ Content(内容):

Please try to answer at least 4 of these questions from our readers.

◇ Are meals in China the same as meals in the West?

◇ What time are lunch and dinner served in China?

◇ How to eat food?

◇ How to behave politely while eating with the old?

◇ How do we know that a meal is over in China?

◇ Is it a good idea to talk about the food during a meal?

◇ Will there be just three courses or more in China?

要求：内容合理；要点齐全；句子及篇章结构准确、连贯；书写规范。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

认真阅读写作内容要求，可获得以下写作信息：

(1) 体裁：本文为议论文。

(2) 人称：宜用第一人称和第三人称。

(3) 时态：一般现在时。

(4) 提示：上面的七个问题中，至少要回答四个问题。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"三维四线法"写风俗文化类作文

"三维"：一、明确介绍主题。

二、描述主题特征。

三、概括作文主旨。

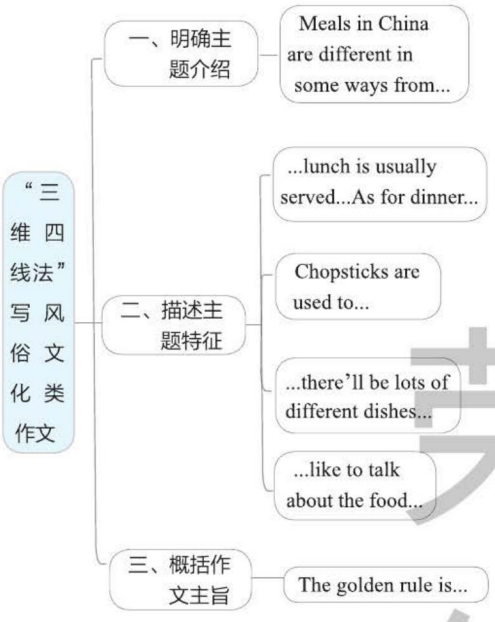
"四线"： 对主题事物的描述及介绍，是文章的主体部分，往往由四个线性元素组成。四个元素或并列或递进，构成介绍类文章的主体。

宋德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

根据所提供的信息，可以将作文分为 3 段：



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	chopsticks, fork, meal, serve, dishes, course, guest, custom
短语	be different from…; as for…; be used to do…; the golden rule; do as …do
句子	1. When in China, do as the Chinese do. 2. Chopsticks are used to... 3.There will be… 4. It's a good topic….

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

When in China, do as the Chinese do!

Meals in China are different in some ways from meals in the West.

In China, lunch is usually served around 12 o'clock. As for dinner, Chinese people eat it much earlier than people in the West. Chopsticks are used to eat most food. Generally, for dinner, there'll be lots of different dishes, not just three courses. Besides, Chinese people like to talk about the food, so it's a good topic during a meal.

The golden rule is when you're in China, watch the Chinese and do as they do!

点评：本文运用了“三维四线法”对中国的饮食文化与西方饮食文化的不同之处做了详细介绍，并化用西方谚语对文章主旨进行了归纳。

一、明确介绍主题：Meals in China are different in some ways from meals in the West.

二、描述主题特征：

1. ...lunch is usually served..., As for dinner...
2. Chopsticks are used...
3....there 'll be lots of different dishes...
4. Chinese people like to talk about the food...

三、概括作文主旨：The golden rule is...

添彩点

1. 作者开篇点题，表述清晰：Meals in China are different in some ways from meals in the West.
2. as for, generally, besides 等词汇的运用使篇章结构紧凑，衔接自然，行文流畅。
3. there 'll be...., it 's a good topic..., watch the Chinese and do as they do 等句式的使用足见作者语言功底较好，语言驾驭能力较强。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见183页)

一、语法专练

1. —What do you think of your junior high school life?

—I think it is enjoyable, _____ I sometimes have some trouble in study. [滨州]

A. if　　B. though

C. while　　D. until

2. It is raining heavily, _____ none of the students are late for school. [青岛]

A. although　　B. but

C. so　　D. because

3. Little Jack has learned to do lots of things on his own, _____ he is only four years old. [安徽]

A. if　　B. though

C. for　　D. since

4. _____ Square Dancing is good exercise for the old, sometimes it makes a lot of noise. [孝感]

A. If　　B. Although

C. Until　　D. Because

5. My grandfather does Chinese kung fu every day _____ he is over eighty. [郴州]

A. since　　B. though

C. until

二、单元知识浓缩

根据短文及所给提示，在文中空白处填写一个正确的单词。

Canada is h_____[6] to many cultures. Only three percent of all Canadians _____[7] (be) First Nations people, but the people of the First Nations were there before other people came to North America. More _____[8] half of Canadians have British or French blood. The r_____[9] are from every part of the world: Asia, Africa, Central America, South America, Australia and other European countries.

_____[10] Canada has two official languages—English and French, most Canadians do not speak both.Many immigrants speak two languages—the language of their first country and English or French.Canada welcomes cultural _____[11] (different) in the people who live there.

So what is a Canadian? That's a _____[12] hard to describe. Canada does not have one culture—it has many. It is important that people from different cultures can live together in one country.

Is there a Canadian food? Not really. Is there a Canadian religion? No. Is there a Canadian kind of music? No again. Is there a Canadian way of _____[13] (understand) the world? Yes. Canadians believe that people should _____[14] (respect) and accept each other and help each other. It's important to keep different languages, religions and customs _____[15] (live).

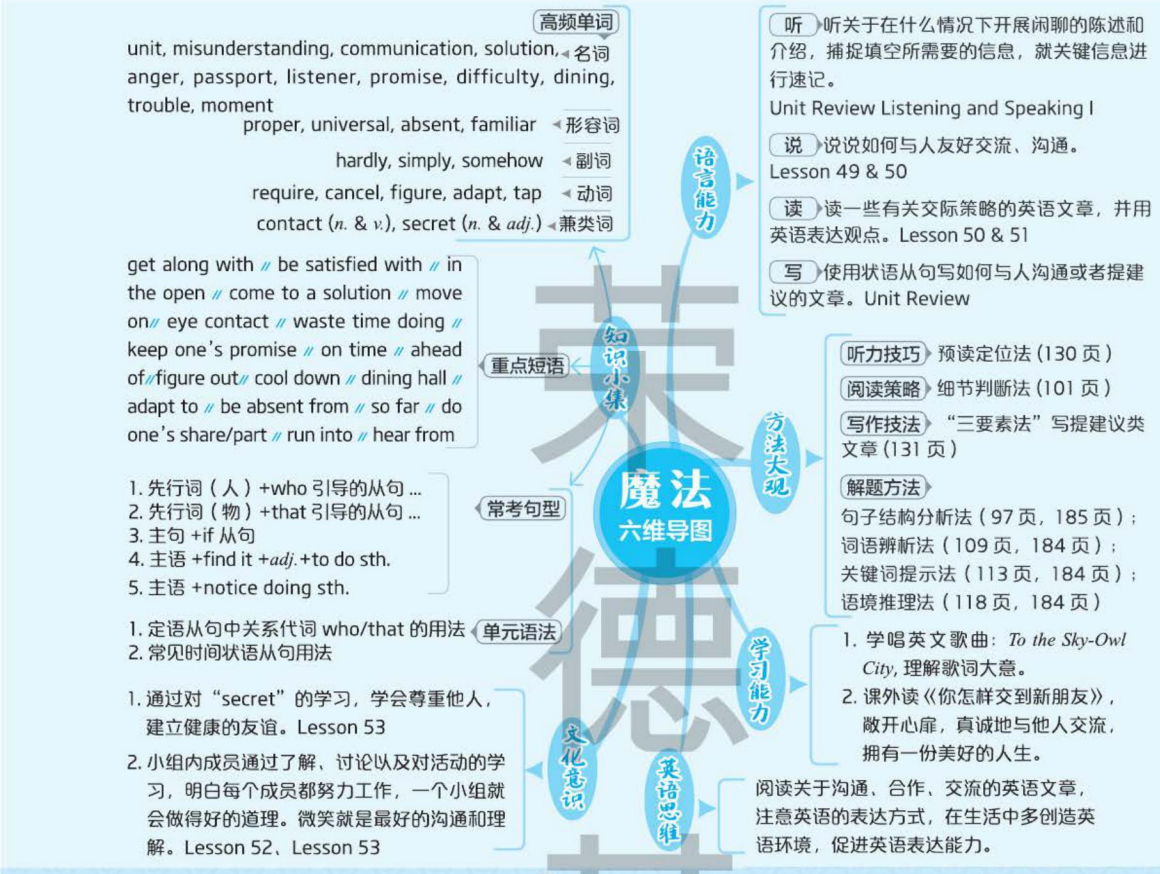
Cease to struggle and you cease to live.

生命不止，奋斗不息。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 9 Communication

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Lesson 49

必背单词

1. **unit** *n.* 单元；单位
2. **require** *v.* 需要 →require sb. to do sth. 要求某人做某事 →require doing 需要（被）……
3. **communication** *n.* 交流；沟通 →have communication with… 和……交流 →be in communication with… 与……保持联络 →communicate *v.* 交流，传达，传播
4. **hardly** *adv.* 几乎不；几乎没有 →hard *adj.* 艰难的；*adv.* 努力地

必背短语

5. get along (well) with 与……相处（好）
6. be satisfied with 对……满意
7. succeed in 在……方面成功
8. in the open 公开；露天；在户外
9. come to a solution 得出解决方案；找到解决办法
10. move on 往前走；前进

必背句子

11. I guess that people **who** know **how to**

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

communicate well with others are happier and more satisfied with their lives.
我认为知道如何和别人很好沟通的人更快乐，而且对他们的生活更满意。

12. **That's why** communication is very important.
那就是沟通很重要的原因。

Lesson 50

必背单词

1. **passport** *n.* 途径；手段；护照
2. **proper** *adj.* 正确的；恰当的 →improper *adj.* 不合适的，不适当的 →properly *adv.* 适当地，正确地
3. **promise** *n.* 承诺；许诺 →make a promise 许下诺言 →keep a promise 信守诺言 →break a promise 违背诺言
4. **cancel** *v.* 取消

必背短语

5. make a great effort to… 尽最大努力去……
6. make sure 确保；确信
7. eye contact 眼神交流；目光接触
8. waste time doing sth. 浪费时间做某事
9. keep one's promise 遵守诺言；守信
10. on time 准时；按时
11. ahead of time 提前

必背句子

12. Have you ever **found it hard to** make new friends?
你曾经发现交新朋友很难吗？
13. The main thing is to **find a topic** you are both interested in.
主要是找到一个你们两个都感兴趣的话题。
14. **Try not to** be late. 尽量不要迟到。
15. **If** you have to change your plan or cancel it, **let** your friends **know** ahead of time.
如果你不得不改变你的计划或取消它，让你的朋友提前知道。
16. People will trust those **who** always keep their promises.
人们会信任那些总是遵守诺言的人。

Lesson 51

必背单词

1. **figure** *v.* 计算；认为 →figure out 弄清楚；弄明白

必背短语

2. used to 过去常常
3. ever since 自从；从……起；自……以后
4. figure out 弄清楚；弄明白
5. leave…alone 让某人静一静；不理某人
6. cool down 平静下来；冷却
7. even if 即使

必背句子

8. I considered all the things **that** could be wrong, but I still can't figure out **what the problem is**. 我考虑了所有可能出问题的事情，但是仍然没弄清楚问题是什么。
9. Sometimes **it's pretty hard to** tell what's wrong in a friendship.
有时候很难说明在一份友谊里出了什么问题。
10. **If** your friend wants to end the friendship, there's nothing you can do about it.
如果你的朋友想要结束这份友谊，对这件事你就无能为力了。
11. But **even if** you're not friends anymore, you should still be friendly.
但是即使你们不再是朋友了，你应该依然友好。

Lesson 52

必背单词

1. **difficulty** *n.* 困难
2. **dining** *n.* 用餐 →dining hall 餐厅；饭厅
3. **adapt** *v.* 使适应；改编 →adapt to 适应

必背短语

4. adapt to 适应
5. smile at sb. 对某人微笑

必背句子

6. But they were **even worse** than he imagined.
但是这些困难比他想象的还要糟糕。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

7. Every lunch hour, after arriving at his new school, Sam sat **alone** in the dining hall.
萨姆到达新学校之后，每到午餐时间，他都独自坐在餐厅里。

8. Sam knew he had to find a way to **change the situation**.
萨姆知道他必须找到一种方法来改变这种局面。

9. Later, he **noticed** the boy coming towards him in the hall with a warm smile on his face,
随后，在餐厅里，他注意到那个男孩面带热情的微笑向他走来。

10. Soon the boy **asked Sam to join** him and his group of friends for lunch.
不久这个男孩请萨姆加入他和他的一群朋友一起吃午餐。

Lesson 53

必背单词

1. **absent** *adj.* 缺席的；不在的 →be absent from 缺席 →absence *n.* 缺席，不在
2. **trouble** *n.* 麻烦；困难 →have trouble (in) doing sth. 做某事有困难 →have trouble with… 有……的病痛，因……而苦恼 →be in trouble 处于困境之中
3. **secret** *n.& adj.* 秘密（的）→in secret 秘密地；暗地里 →keep a secret 保守秘密 →keep sth. a secret 将某事保密 →make no secret of sth. 对某事不加隐瞒

必背短语

4. look forward to 盼望；期待
5. slow … down 减慢……
6. so far 目前为止；迄今
7. do one's share/part 尽某人的责任；做分内工作

必背句子

8. **It's time for** our group project.
到我们的小组课题时间了。

9. She realizes that talking about problems is **better than** keeping them as secrets.
她意识到谈论问题要比把它们保密更好。

Lesson 54

必背单词

1. **moment** *n.* 片刻；瞬间 →at the moment 此刻；目前 →for a moment 片刻，一会儿 →for the moment 暂时，暂且；目前
2. **tap** *v.* 轻拍；轻敲 →tapped（过去式；过去分词）
3. **familiar** *adj.* 熟悉的；常见到的

必背短语

4. run into 偶然遇见；撞上；撞到
5. remind sb. of sth. 提醒某人某事
6. hear from 接到来电；收到信息

必背句子

7. When he tapped me on the shoulder and said my name, I couldn't **figure out who he was**.
当他拍着肩膀叫我的名字时，我弄不清楚他是谁了。

8. Before I could **say sorry**, he said he had to go and waved goodbye.
我还没来得及向他道歉，他说他得走了，并且挥手道别。

9. **After talking** to Wang Mei, I felt better.
和王梅谈过后，我感觉好多了。

10. He **was happy to hear from** me, and we **had a good conversation**.
接到我的电话他很高兴，而且我们交谈得很愉快。

单元必背语法

1. I considered all the things that could be wrong, **but** I still can't figure out what the problem is.
我想了所有可能出错的地方，但我仍找不出问题在哪儿。

2. **Before** he arrived,he knew there would be many difficulties.
在他到达之前，他就知道会有许多困难。

3. One morning, **as** Sam was walking by a group of students, he smiled at them.
一天早上，当萨姆走过一群学生时，他朝他们微笑。

4. **Although** Sam wasn't able to say much in French, everyone smiled and laughed.
尽管萨姆不会用法语说太多，但每个人都笑了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 49 Get Along with Others

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you have good relationships with the people in your life? 你和你生活中的人关系好吗?
- What do you think is most important for a good friendship? 你认为好的友谊中什么是最重要的?

课文朗读

Ms. Liu: Hi class! We have an interesting topic for this unit /ˈjuːnɪt/. First, let me ask you a question: How do you get along with ① others in school or at home? 同学们好！我们这一单元有一个有趣的话题。首先，让我问你们一个问题：在学校或在家中你和别人相处得怎么样?

Li Ming: I think I'm doing well. I have many friends. 我认为我做得很好。我有许多朋友。

Wang Mei: I have many friends, too. We have a lot of fun together.

我也有许多朋友。我们在一起玩得很开心。

Ms. Liu: Do you always get along well with your friends? 你总是和你的朋友们相处很融洽吗?

Wang Mei: Well, not always...Sometimes friends have misunderstandings. Sometimes a friend really hurts you without ② realizing it. 嗯，不总是……有时朋友之间会有误解。有时一个朋友真的会无意伤到你。

Li Ming: That's true. Friendship requires /rɪˈkwaɪəz/ ③ good communication /kəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/. ④的确如此。友谊需要好的交流。

Ms. Liu: Very good point. If we can't communicate well, we can hardly/ˈhɑːdli/ ⑤ get along with our friends. It's the same with ⑥ family relationships. 很好的观点。如果我们不能很好地交流，我们就几乎不能和我们的朋友相处。家庭成员的关系也是一样的。

Yang Hao: I guess that people who know how to communicate well with others are happier and more satisfied with their lives. They are more likely ⑦ to succeed ⑧ in their jobs. 我认为懂得和别人如何很好交流的人对他们的生活会感到更加快乐和满足。他们在工作中更有可能会成功。

Ms. Liu: Exactly! That's why communication is very important. It's always better to get things out in the open—talk about a problem, come to a solution/səˈluːʃn/ ⑨ or move on. Bad feelings like hate and anger/ˈæŋgə/ ⑩ can make you seriously ill. This week we'll talk more about communication. Hopefully, we'll all learn to get along better with each other!

完全正确！那就是交流很重要的原因。把事情说出来总是会更好——讨论一个问题，得出一个解决办法或改变话题。不好的感觉像厌恶和怒气会使你非常不舒服。这周我们将谈论更多的关于交流的话题。但愿，我们都将学会更好地与别人相处!

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and match the people with their statements.

阅读课文并把每个人和他们的陈述相匹配。

Friendship requires good communication.

友谊需要好的交流。

People who know how to communicate well with others are more likely to succeed in their jobs.

懂得和别人如何很好交流的人在他们的工作中更可能会成功。

It's always better to get things out in the open.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

把事情说出来总是会更好。

Sometimes friends have misunderstandings. 有时朋友之间会有误解。

2 Rewrite the sentences below with the correct forms of the phrases from the lesson.

用课文中的短语的正确形式重新写下面的句子。

1. It took them more than an hour to solve the problem.→It took them more than an hour to _____. 他们花了一个多小时来解决这个问题。→他们花了一个多小时来 _____。
2. We had a wonderful time in the park.→We had _____ in the park. 我们在公园里玩得很开心。→我们 _____ 在公园里。

3 Change the following adjectives into adverbs and use them to complete the sentences.

把下面的形容词变为副词然后用它们完成句子。

easy 容易的 ____	hopeful 有希望的 ____
exact 准确的 ____	real 真正的 ____
serious 严重的 ____	

1. Using the search engines, you can _____ find books in this library. 用搜寻引擎，你可以 _____ 在这所图书馆里找到书。
2. Here is a book on grammar. _____, it will help you with your study. 这儿有一本语法书。_____，它将对你的学习有帮助。
3. The old lady walked _____ slowly. It took her a long time to get there. 这位老妇人走得 _____ 慢。她花了很长时间到达那里。
4. I'm sorry to hear that.Was she _____ hurt? 听到那（个消息）我很抱歉。她伤得 _____ 吗?
5. Jim must have copied Paul's work because they made _____ the same mistakes. 吉姆一定抄了保罗的作业，因为他们犯了_____同样的错误。

4 Work in groups. Share your ideas about communication. You can use "I think...", "I guess...", "That's for sure!", "That's true!" or "Good point!".

小组练习。把你关于交流的想法分享出来。你可以使用“我认为……”，“我猜……”，“那是肯定的！”，“的确是这样！”或者“说得好！”。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★How do you get along with others in school or at home?

① get along with 与……相处

get on well with 相处得好

get on badly with 相处得不好

get along with 后跟人表示“与……相处”，后面跟物表示“进展”。

e.g. Mrs. Black gets along well with her neighbours.

布莱克夫人和她的邻居们相处得很好。

Do you get along well with your classmates?

你和你的同班同学相处得好吗?

对 well/ badly 提问则用 how。

How are you getting along with your English study?

你英语学得怎么样了?

He is getting along well with his workmates. 他与同事们相处得很好。

考题在线 1 因为他与每个人都相处融洽，所以人们对他的评价很高。 [常州]

He _____ everyone, so he was _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨:用 get on/ along well with sb. 表示“与某人相处融洽”，下文的 was 提示用一般过去时态；用 speak highly of sb. 表示“对某人评价很高”，was 提示用被动语态表达，介词 of 不能省略。

★**Sometimes a friend really hurts you without realizing it.**

② **without** /wɪˈðaʊt/ *prep.* 没有，不用，无

without 作介词，其后常接名词、代词或动名词。

e.g. She left the room without saying a word. 她一句话也没说就离开了房间。

She will get wet if she goes out in the rain without an umbrella.

雨天外出，她不带伞的话会淋湿的。

考题在线 2 —Reading is a good way to spend the time on the plane.

—That's true. I never go travelling _____ a book.

A. without　　B. from　　C. on　　D. about

点拨:考查介词辨析。句意：—— 读书是在飞机上度过时间的好方法。—— 是的。不带书的话，我从来不去旅行。without 没有；from 来自……；on 在……上面；about 关于。

Do you love life? Then do not squander time; for that's the stuff life is made up of. 你热爱生命吗？那么，别浪费时间，因为生命是由时间组成的。

★**Friendship requires good communication.**

敲黑板 require doing 需特殊记，表被动。

③ **require** /rɪˈkwaɪə/ *v.* to need something 需要

require 的用法：
- require sth.
- require sb. to do sth.
- require that...
- require doing=require to be done

e.g. I require your help. 我需要你的帮助。

What do you require me to do?

你要我做什么？

The wall requires painting.

墙壁需要粉刷。

The situation required that he should be present.

这种情形需要他在场。

在 require/suggest/advise 后面的 that 从句中，谓语形式为：(should) + 动词原形。

考题在线 3 Don't throw away the waste paper. It requires _____. [龙东]

A. to recycle　　B. recycling　　C. recycle

点拨:考查动词 require 的用法。句意为：不要乱扔废纸。它需要回收利用。It 指代的是 the waste paper, require doing 需要（被）……。

④ **communication** /kəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/ *n.* the activity or process of expressing ideas and feelings 交流，沟通

communication 的用法：
- have communication with...
- be in communication with...

e.g. I am in communication with my old friends by WeChat.

我和我的老朋友们通过微信联系。

David had close communication with his Chinese friends.

戴维和他的中国朋友们交流密切。

communication 动词 communicate

Can you communicate with the dog by gesture?

communicate with...

你能用手势跟这只狗交流吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★ **If we can't communicate well, we can hardly get along with our friends.**

hardly 常位于行为动词之前，助动词之后。

⑤ **hardly** /'hɑ:dli/ *adv.* almost not 几乎不；几乎没有

e.g. He is very shy and hardly talks with others.

他很腼腆，几乎不与其他人交谈。

He works hard. 他努力工作。

He hardly works.

他几乎不工作。

辨析：hard 与 hardly

① hard adj. 难懂的；adv. 努力地

② hardly adv. 几乎不

hardly 是一个否定词，句子中含有 hardly 时，其反意疑问句的疑问部分应用肯定形式。

They can hardly remember the little girl, can they?

他们几乎记不起这个小女孩，是吗？

考题在线 4 I could _____ control my feelings at that moment. The movie reminded me of my childhood. [白银]

A. really　　B. nearly

C. slowly　　D. hardly

点拨：考查副词词义辨析。really 真正地；nearly 几乎；slowly 慢慢地；hardly 几乎不。结合句意“那一刻我_____控制我的感情。那部电影使我想起了我的童年。”可知，空处填 hardly 合适，could hardly 意为“几乎不能”。

★ **It's the same with family relationships.**

“我也一样（不）。”的各种表达：

- It is the same with me.
- So it is with me.
- So do/can/am I.
- Neither do/can/am I.

⑥ **It is/was the same with…** ……也是一样的。

e.g. —I talk much about communication every day.

我每天谈论很多有关沟通的事。

—It is the same with me. /So it is with me. /So do I.

我也是。

—I didn't finish my task yesterday.

昨天我没有完成任务。

—It was the same with me. /So it was with me. /Neither did I.

我也是。

考题在线 5 —More and more people prefer to walk rather than ride in cars.

— _____. Walking is good for health. [宜昌]

A. So they are　　B. So are they

C. So they do　　D. So do they

点拨：考查情景交际。句意：——比起开车来越来越多的人更喜欢步行。——确实如此，步行有利于健康。由答语可知，后者赞同前者的说法，意为“他们的确是这样”，表示“某人的确……”，用“So+ 主语 +be 动词 / 助动词 / 情态动词”结构表示，根据 prefer to walk 可知用助动词 do。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**They are more likely to succeed in their jobs.**

⑦ **likely** /'laɪkli/ *adj.* 可能的

e.g. It is likely that he won't come. It is too late. 他可能不会来了。天太晚了。

He is more likely to go traveling with me. 他更有可能和我一起去旅游。

常见用法：
be likely to do sth. 可能做某事

⑧ **succeed** /sək'si:d/ *v.* 成功

e.g. Work hard, and you will succeed. 努力工作，你会成功的。

Nothing succeeds like success. 一事成，百事顺。

The play was very successful on Broadway.

那部剧在百老汇大获成功。

At last they successfully solved the problem.

最后，他们成功地解决了这个问题。

succeed 的词形变化及用法：
success n.
抽象意义，不可数
具体意义，可数
successful adj.
successfully adv.

考题在线 6 I believe I will _____ in passing the English exam. (成功) [扬州]

点拨: succeed in doing sth. 成功做某事。

考题在线 7 —Come on, Sandy. Everybody will be lucky or _____ (成功的) sometime in their life.

—Thanks. I'll try again. [连云港]

点拨: 句子结构分析法。or 为并列连词，or 前的 lucky 为形容词，后面也应用形容词。

Behind every successful man, there's a lot of unsuccessful years.
每个成功者都经历过很多不成功的岁月。

★**It's always better to get things out in the open — talk about a problem, come to a solution or move on.**

⑨ **solution** /sə'lu:ʃn/ *n.* 解决办法；答案

e.g. I hope you can come up with a better solution.

我希望你能想出一个更好的解决办法。

It was only a partial solution to the problem.

那只是部分地解决了这个问题。

solve v. 解决，解答
solve the problem "解决问题"，相当于 find a solution to the problem，意为"找到问题的解决方法"。

注意其后介词用的是 to

★**Bad feelings like hate and anger can make you seriously ill.**

⑩ **anger** /'æŋgə(r)/ *n.* 怒；怒火；怒气

e.g. She is filled with anger. 她满腔怒火。

He spoke in anger. 他怒气冲冲地说。

in anger 相当于 angrily，在句中作状语。
anger (n.) → angry (adj.) → angrily (adv.)

考题在线 8 我的弟弟有足够的耐心，他等半小时也不会生气。 [淮安]

My brother is _____ to wait for half an hour without _____.

考题在线答案 1. got along/on well with; spoken highly of 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C 6. succeed 7. successful 8. patient enough; anger/getting (being/becoming) angry

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见183页)

一、用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. Tickets are _____ (like) to go up in price.

2. The road to _____ (succeed) is to work honestly. [兰州]

3. We need to come up with a new _____ (solve) to make polluted water clean. [烟台改编]

4. WeChat makes it more convenient for people _____ (communicate) with each other. [烟台改编]

5. You're required _____ (take) part in the P. E. test unless you have a doctor's note. [福州改编]

二、单项选择

6. I am not good at communicating _____ others.

A. to B. at C. from D. with

7. Who is _____ to help us with our physics?

A. most like B. much likely

C. more like D. more likely

8. —Many products made in China are very popular in the United States.

—Yeah. Americans can _____ avoid buying Chinese products. [荆州]

A. nearly B. mostly

C. hardly D. widely

9. Overseas experience may help make our life _____. So why not try to study abroad? [东营]

A. usual B. useful

C. successful D. traditional

10. It is important for us to _____ our classmates. It can make our life more beautiful. 【导学号：2994592】

A. get along well with

B. come up with

C. catch up with

D. do well in

三、连词成句

11. mistake, I, your, took, pen, by

_____.

12. Jack, get, well, can, others, with, along

_____?

13. playing, beach, we, volleyball, had, fun

_____.

14. I, with, classmates, hardly, my, communicate

_____.

15. required, my, repairing, old, bike

_____.



Actions speak louder than words.
行动胜于言语。

未德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 50 Tips for Good Communication

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 • 导读

导读批注

Pre-reading（读前）

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How do you communicate with a new friend?
  你怎样和一个新朋友交流?
- In your opinion, what are the best ways to communicate?
  依你看，最好的交流方法有哪些?

请开始你的表演



While-reading（读中）

- What's the passport to good communication that is mentioned in the passage? 在文章中提到的良好交流的途径是什么?
- How to be a good listener? 怎样做一个好的听者?

❶ Do you have many friends? Do you have fun together? Do you feel comfortable when talking to others①? Have you ever found it hard to make new friends? Here are some tips for good interpersonal/ˌɪntəˈpɜːsənl/ communication:

课文朗读

你有许多朋友吗? 你们在一起玩得开心吗? 当与他人谈话时你感觉舒服吗? 你有没有发现交新朋友很难? 这里是一些关于良好人际交流的窍门:

批 句子：一连串疑问句的使用，引起读者的阅读兴趣，为切入主题作好铺垫

批 考点：找文章主题句

❷ Remember other people's names. Make a great effort② to do this when you first meet someone new. Then when you meet again, you will easily make that person feel comfortable if you remember his or her name.It shows you care. 记住他人的名字。当你第一次见一个陌生人时，尽全力做到这点。然后当你们再见面时，如果你能记住他或她的名字，这会很容易使那个人感觉很舒服。它表明你很在意。

批 体裁：议论文

❸ Smile. Make sure③ you smile and greet others in a friendly way, especially the first time you meet them. Smiling can be a passport /ˈpɑːspɔːt/ to good communication. 微笑。确保你微笑以及用一种友好的方式问候他人，尤其是你第一次见他们时。微笑会是通往良好交流的一种途径。

批 文章结构：总 — 分；第①段 第②-⑦段

❹ Find a proper/ˈprɒpə/④ topic. Talk about the weather, sports or news. You can also ask questions or tell jokes. The main thing is to find a topic you are both interested in. 找一个合适的话题。谈论天气、体育运动或新闻。你还可以问问题或讲笑话。主要是找一个你俩都感兴趣的话题。

❺ Be a good listener/ˈlɪsənə/. Good listeners show others that they are interested in the conversation. People will be happy to talk to you if⑤

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

you are listening carefully. One simple way to show you are a good listener is to make eye contact/ˈkɒntækt/. 当一个好的听众。好的听众让别人感觉他们对谈话很感兴趣。如果你在仔细听，人们将会很高兴与你交谈。表明你是一个好听众的一种简单方式就是进行眼神交流。

批句子：

（右边画"⌒"处）条件状语从句的连续使用，向我们展示了可能会发生的情况。

⑥ Be honest. Tell people the truth. No one wants to waste⑥ time talking to someone who is not honest.
诚实。告诉人们实情。没有人想浪费时间和不诚实的人谈话。

⑦ Keep your promises/ˈprɒmɪsɪz/⑦. Try not to be late. If you set⑧ a time to meet your friends, do your best to be on time. If you have to change your plan or cancel/ˈkæns(ə)l/⑨ it, let your friends know ahead of time⑩. People will trust those who always keep their promises.
守信。尽量不要迟到。如果你约好时间见你的朋友，要尽你最大努力准时到。如果你不得不改变计划或取消计划，让你的朋友提前知道。人们会相信那些总是守信的人。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 （见130页）

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Some people are talking about ways to communicate well. Listen to the interview and match the names with their suggestions. 一些人在谈论良好交流的方法。听采访并将名字与他们的建议连线。



Jane 简	Be aware of your body language. 意识到你的肢体语言。
Dan 丹	Always keep a smile on your face. 脸上总是带着微笑。
Chrissy 克丽茜	Make eye contact. 进行眼神交流。
Julie 朱莉	Don't interrupt others when they are talking. 当他人谈话的时候不要打断他们。

2 Here are some tips for good communication. Group them into the baskets below.
这是一些关于良好交流的窍门。把它们分组到下面的篮子里。

A Talk about the weather, sports or other news. 谈论天气、体育运动或其他新闻。
B Tell an interesting story. 讲一个有趣的故事。
C Listen carefully. 仔细听。
D Tell jokes. 讲笑话。
E Don't break your promises. 不要违背你的诺言。
F Don't tell lies. 不要说谎。
G Don't interrupt others. 不要打断他人。
H Try not to be late. 尽可能不要迟到。

Find a proper topic. 找一个合适的话题。
Be a good listener. 当一名好的听众。
Be honest. 要诚实。
Keep your promises. 信守你的诺言。

3 Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词填空。

promise 承诺　cancel 取消　proper 适当的　passport 护照

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

1. If you want to _____ the meeting, you must inform us a week before.
如果你想要 _____ 会议，你必须提前一周通知我们。

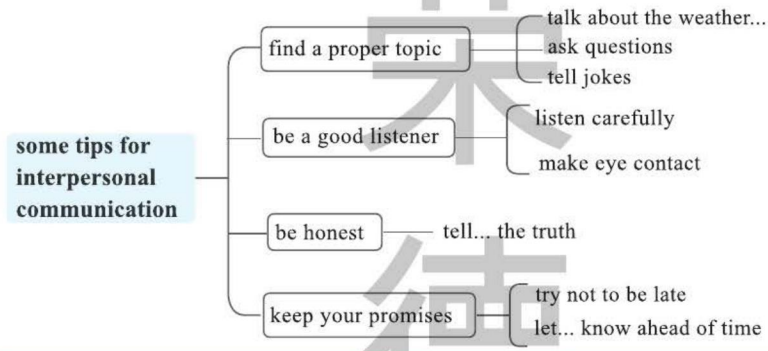
2. She could not find a _____ solution to this problem.
她找不到一个 _____（解决）这个问题的办法。

3. Zhang Jian plans to go abroad but he needs to get a _____ first.
张建计划去国外但他需要先获得一个 _____。

4. I can't make a _____, but I'll try my best. 我不能许下一个 _____，但我会尽我最大的努力。

4 Work in pairs. Think about your family and friends. What makes you happy in the way they communicate with others? Talk about it.
结对活动。想一想你的家人和朋友。在他们和其他人交流的方式中，什么使你高兴？谈一谈。

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

（答案见183页）

阅读策略

细节判断法（应用于阅读理解中的细节理解题。做这类题时，我们需要纵观全文，汇总、甄别信息，然后对所有的信息进行逐个分析，推敲判断出正确答案。）

阅读过程

一、速读 Lesson 50，回答问题：

1. What's the main idea of the first tip?

（主旨大意题）

_____

二、细读文章，完成下列任务

2. ⊙ Why does the person feel comfortable if you remember his or her name? Because _____.

（细节理解题）

A. it shows you care
B. his or her name sounds interesting
C. his or her name is hard to forget
D. he or she has a name

3. ⊙ What should you do if you have to change your plan or cancel it?

（细节理解题）

A. Do your best to be on time.
B. Keep your promises.
C. Let your friends know ahead of time.
D. Try not to be late.

拓展阅读

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·考点批注　·考点应用

★Do you feel comfortable when talking to others?

when talking to others 在句中作状语，这时 -ing 形式的逻辑主语通常是句子的主语。

① **when talking to others** 跟别人交谈的时候

e.g. When sleeping, I never hear a thing. → 作状语

(=When I am sleeping, I never hear a thing.)

当我睡觉时，我什么也听不见。

连词、介词加 doing（表主动）/ done（表被动）作句中状语的结构：

1. while, when, whenever, once, until + doing/ done: 作时间状语。
2. though，although，even though，even if + doing/ done：作让步状语。
3. if，unless + doing/ done：作条件状语。
4. where, wherever + doing/ done：作地点状语。

考题在线 1 He met an old friend while _____ (walk) in the street.

★Make a great effort to do this when you first meet someone new.

常见短语：
- make an effort 作出努力
- make a great effort to do sth. 努力做某事

② **effort** /'efət/ *n.* 努力，艰难的尝试，试图，尽力

e.g. We will make an effort to get in touch with you.

我们会努力跟你们取得联系。

考题在线 2 中国现在正在努力为孩子们提供更好的教育。 [黄冈]

Nowadays China is _____ _____ _____ to offer children better education.

★Make sure you smile and greet others in a friendly way…

make sure { (that) 从句 / of/about }

③ **make sure** 查明，核实，确保，设法保证

e.g. Make sure (that) the work has been done before you leave.

你要确保你离开之前工作已经做完。

Can you make sure of/about the time?

你能保证时间吗？



考题在线 3 —Can I borrow your new comic books?

—_____ Here they are. [白银]

A. What's up?　B. What a pity!

C. Sure.　D. Thank you.

点拨：考查交际用语。What's up 怎么了；What a pity 真遗憾；Sure 当然；Thank you 谢谢你。问句是“我能借你的新漫画书吗？”根据答语中的“给你”可知，后者同意将漫画书借给对方。

考题在线 4 I'm s_____（确信的）that our dreams will come true through our efforts. [安徽]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★Find a proper topic.

④ **proper** /'prɒpə(r)/ *adj.* 正确的，恰当的

properly adv.
适当地，正确地

e.g. Nothing is in its proper place. 东西都放得乱七八糟。

Your pen's lifespan（寿命）will be longer if it is properly used.
你的钢笔要是使用得当，使用期限就会长些。



考题在线 5 大自然如此重要以至于我们都在合理保护它。 [苏州]

_____

★People will be happy to talk to you if you…

敲黑板 高频考点 一定看仔细 if 的意义，确定时态。

⑤ 【高频】**if** /ɪf/ *conj.* 如果；是否

e.g. If you are ill, you must see the doctor.
如果你病了，你就必须去看医生。

if"如果"，引导条件状语从句时，从句用一般现在时，主句要用一般将来时，也可用祈使句或含有情态动词的句子。

No one knows if it will stop raining.
谁也不知道雨会不会停。

if"是否"，引导宾语从句，从句时态根据具体情况确定。

I'm not sure whether he'll come or not.
我不确定他是否会来。

if 与 whether 引导宾语从句一般可互换，但当从句中有 or not 的时候，应用 whether。

考题在线 6 I can lend my bike to you _____ you promise to take good care of it. [辽阳]

A. while　　B. if

C. although　　D. unless

点拨：句意：如果你答应好好爱护它，我可以把自行车借给你。while 当……的时候，然而；if 假如，如果；although 尽管，虽然；unless 除非，如果不。

★No one wants to waste time talking to someone who is not honest.

⑥ **waste** /weɪst/ *v.* 浪费；*n.* 废弃物

e.g. Don't waste time in doing the work.
别在那项工作上浪费时间了。

The girl often wastes money on clothes.
这个女孩常在衣服上浪费钱。

It's a waste of money to buy that. 买那个东西是白费金钱。

- waste v. 浪费
  - waste time (in) doing sth. 浪费时间做某事
  - waste money on sb./ sth. 浪费金钱在某人/某物上
- waste n. 浪费
  - a waste of… 浪费……

★Keep your promises.

⑦ **promise** /'prɒmɪs/ *v.* 答应，许诺 *n.* 承诺，许诺；获得成功的迹象

e.g. He promised to come to help me learn English.
他答应来帮我学英语。

He promised his grandchildren the money.
他答应给孙子孙女们这笔钱。

You promised that you'd be home early tonight.
你曾保证今晚会早回家的。

- promise 的用法
  - promise to do sth. 答应、许诺做某事
  - promise sb. sth.=promise sth. to sb. 答应某人某事
  - promise+that 从句保证、承诺……

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

You must make a promise that you'll never be late again.

make/keep/break a promise
许下、遵守、违背诺言

你必须承诺你以后不再迟到了。

You must keep your promise.

你必须信守诺言。

I'm sorry that I broke my promise.

对不起，我违背了我的诺言。

考题在线 7 I can't tell you what she said. I've promised _____ it a secret. [上海]

A. keep　　B. to keep

C. keeping　　D. kept

常见有关 set 的短语：
set up 建立，创立
set off 出发，动身
set down 记下，写下
set about 开始，着手
set out 启程，出发

★**If you set a time to meet your friends, do your best to be on time.**

⑧ **set** /set/ *v.* 确定，安排，设置

e.g. They ate everything that was set in front of them.

意为"放置"

他们把放在面前的东西都吃光了。

Let's set a time to go to the movies!

set a...to do sth.
约定……去做某事。

让我们约定一个时间去看电影吧！

They set out on the last stage of their journey.

他们动身踏上最后一段行程。

set 还可作名词，意为"一套，一副，一组"，常见短语：a set of 一套/副/组……；作形容词，意为"安排好的，确定的，固定的"，常见短语 a set number of… 固定数目的……。

e.g. a set of six chairs 六把成套的椅子

a complete set of her novels 一整套她的小说

★**If you have to change your plan or cancel it, let your friends know ahead of time.**

cancel 常用于指取消安排、计划、会议、假期、约会、航班等。其过去式和过去分词均为 cancel(l)ed。

⑨ **cancel** /'kæns(ə)l/ *v.* to end an agreement 取消

e.g. He cancelled his order for the goods.

他取消了货物订单。

All flights have been cancelled because of the bad weather.

由于天气恶劣，所有航班都被取消了。

⑩ **ahead of time** 提前

ahead of time 为固定短语，意为"提前"，表示在原定时间以前，相当于 ahead of schedule。
ahead of… 表示"（时间、空间）在……前面"。

e.g. They finished the work ahead of time.

他们提前完成了这项工作。

The work was done ahead of schedule.

工作在计划前完成了。

考题在线答案 1. walking　2. making an effort　3. C　4. sure　5. Nature is so important that we are all protecting it properly.　6. B　7. B

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见183页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成下列单词

1. Mother thinks it is a _____(浪费) of time to play computer games. [新疆]
2. Think it over, and you must make a _____ (恰当的) decision.
3. The only _____(途径) to success is hard work.
4. If it rains tomorrow, we will have to _____ (取消) the match.
5. Don't forget to keep in _____(联系) with your teachers and classmates after you graduate.

二、选择短语，并用其适当形式填空

not tell, make sure, set a time, make an effort, ahead of

6. Jim is running _____ me.
7. You must _____ that no one finds out about this.
8. We have _____ to meet our friends; do your best to be on time.
9. We must _____ to keep our environment clean.
10. Please promise _____ lies any more, will you? [烟台]

三、单项选择

11. Li Ming is so careful that he always looks over his exercises to _____ there are no mistakes.
A. make sure B. talk about
C. think of D. look for

12. —David, why are you so excited?
—Because my father has made a _____ that he will take me to Tibet next month.
A. face B. promise
C. mistake D. noise

13. He felt happy when _____ on the computer.
A. to play B. playing
C. play D. played

14. _____ you must go and play football, at least wait until school is over. [呼和浩特]
A. If B. Whether
C. Unless D. So that

15. You're wasting your time _____ to explain it to him.
A. trying B. to try
C. tried D. to trying



Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
今日事今日毕。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 51 What Could Be Wrong?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Have you had any problems with your friends? 你和你的朋友们有过一些问题吗?
- When you have a problem with a friend, what do you usually do? 当你和你的朋友出现问题时，你通常做什么?

Dear Sue, 亲爱的苏:

课文朗读

There is a problem between me and my good friend. We used to ① study and play together, but ever since last Friday, she hasn't spoken to me. I considered ② all the things that could be wrong, but I still can't figure/ˈfɪgə/ out ③ what the problem is. I tried to call her, but she didn't answer. What should I do?

我和我的好朋友之间出了一个问题。过去我们常常一起学习一起玩，但是自从上周五以来，她不再和我说话了。我想了所有可能出错的地方，但我仍找不出问题在哪儿。我努力给她打电话，但她不接。我该怎么做?

A Lost Girl 一个迷茫的女孩

Dear Lost Girl, 亲爱的迷茫女孩:

Many people have had the same experience as you. Sometimes it's pretty hard to tell what's wrong in a friendship. Try writing to your friend or you can ask another friend for help. If neither of these things works, just leave your friend alone ④. She may need some time to cool down and think about the situation herself.

许多人和你一样有着相同的经历。有时很难说出友谊中出现了什么问题。试着给你的朋友写信或找你另外的朋友帮忙。如果这些都不起作用，就让你的朋友一个人呆着。她或许需要一些时间冷静下来自己想想这种局面。

If you figure out what the problem is, think about it. Did you really hurt your friend? If yes, go directly to her and say sorry. Maybe it was just a big misunderstanding. 如果你找出问题所在，就想一想这个问题。你是不是真的伤害到你的朋友了? 如果是，直接去找她跟她说对不起。或许这只是个大误会。

If your friend wants to end the friendship, there's nothing you can do about it. Both of you can move on and find new friends. But even if ⑤ you're not friends anymore ⑥, you should still be friendly. Say hi to her when you pass her at school. Maybe one day she will realize what a good friend you are. 如果你的朋友想结束友谊，对此你没有什么可以做的。你们都可以向前走，去找新的朋友。但是即使你们不再是朋友，你仍然应该友好。当你在学校与她擦肩而过时要向她打招呼。或许有一天她会意识到你是多么好的一个朋友。

Sue 苏

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 **Read the lesson and answer the questions.** 读课文并回答问题。

1. What has happened to the Lost Girl?
   迷茫女孩发生了什么事?
2. What are Sue's suggestions if a friend wants to end the friendship?
   如果一个朋友想结束友谊，苏的建议是什么?

2 **Listen to the reply from the Lost Girl and fill in the blanks.** 听来自迷茫女孩的回复，然后填空。

课文听力

Dear Sue, 亲爱的苏:

Thanks for your advice. I wrote my friend a letter and told her

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

I wouldn't want to lose her as a friend. I asked her what was wrong. She wrote back to me after she _____. There was a _____. I didn't go home with her last Thursday as we had planned. She _____ me, but I missed the call. I _____ it was all my fault. I went to her and said sorry. We are now friends again. I'm very happy.

谢谢你的建议。我给我的朋友写了一封信并告诉她我不想失去她这样的朋友。我问她发生了什么事。她_____之后给我回信。有一个_____。上星期四我没有按计划和她一起回家。她_____我，但我错过了电话。我_____这都是我的错。我去找她并对她说对不起。我们现在又成为朋友了。我很高兴。

The Lost Girl 迷茫女孩

3 Read the lesson again and tick the advice Sue gave to the Lost Girl.

再读课文并勾出苏给迷茫女孩的建议。

☐ Say sorry if you hurt your friend.
如果你伤害到你的朋友说对不起。

☐ Give your friend some time to cool down.
给你朋友一些时间冷静下来。

☐ Clearly express how you feel.
清楚地表达你的感受。

☐ Write to your friend and ask what's wrong.
给你的朋友写信并问问出了什么事。

☐ Talk to your friend directly as soon as possible.
尽可能快地、直接地去和你的朋友谈一谈。

☐ You can still be friendly even if you are not friends anymore.
即使你们不再是朋友你仍需友好。

☐ Be aware of your body language.
要意识到你的肢体语言。

PROJECT 课题

DOCTOR SUE SAYS 苏博士说

Work in groups. Write about a problem between two friends on a piece of paper. The problem should be short and clear.

小组活动。把两个朋友之间的一个问题写在一张纸上。问题应该简短明了。

- Collect all the paper in the class.
收集班上所有的纸。
- Shuffle the paper. 打乱纸张的顺序。
- Each group draws a piece of paper.
每个小组抽一张纸。

Read the problem in your group and write some advice to that person.

读你小组的问题并给那个人写一些建议。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用

•考点批注

★ **We used to study and play together, …**

敲黑板 used to + do 过去常常，used 中 d 不要丢掉哟！

① used to 过去常常，曾经

used to 后跟动词原形，说明过去习惯、经常性的动作或行为状态。

e.g. In China, people used to think that Chang'e was on the moon.
在中国，人们以前常常认为嫦娥在月球上。

used to do sth. 过去常常做某事（现在不了）

We used to go to the English Corner. 我们过去常常去英语角。

疑问：Did he use to do...? 他过去常常……吗？

A stamp is used to send letters. 邮票是用来寄信件的。

I am used to getting up early. 我习惯早起。

否定：He didn't use to do... 他过去不……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Knives are used for cutting things. 刀是用来切东西的。

be used to do...
被用来做……
be/get used to doing...
习惯于做……
be used for doing...
被用作……用途

考题在线 1 —What do you usually do before going to bed?

—I _____. [青海]

A. used to write diaries

B. am used to sleeping

C. am used to reading

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。used to write diaries 过去常常写日记；am used to sleeping 习惯于睡觉；am used to reading 习惯于阅读。根据上句中的 usually，可知答语应用一般现在时，故排除 A 项；B 项“习惯睡觉”与问句句意矛盾，故可排除 B 项；选项 C 符合句意：——在上床睡觉之前，你通常干什么？——我习惯于阅读。

考题在线 2 —My father _____ to his workplace by bus, but now he _____ there by bike.

—Really? You have an environmentally-friendly father. [安顺]

A. used to go; is used to go　　B. used to going; is used to go

C. is used to go; is used to going　　D. used to go; is used to going



点拨：第一句句意：我爸爸过去常常乘公交车去他的工作场所，但是现在他习惯于骑自行车去那儿了。分析句意可推知：我爸爸过去常常乘公交车，用 used to do 表示；根据后半句句意：但是现在他习惯于骑自行车去那儿了，用 is used to doing 表示。

★**I considered all the things that could be wrong, but I still can't figure out what the problem is.**

② **consider** /kən'sɪdə(r)/ *v.* **认为**

e.g. I consider that it is a good film. 我认为这是一部好电影。

She was considering what she should do next.
她在考虑下一步应该做什么。

He first considered visiting me, but then he changed his mind.
开始他考虑来看望我，可后来他改变了主意。

He considered himself as a man. 他把自己当作男子汉。

与 consider 有关的结构：
consider 后跟宾语从句，“考虑……”
consider doing sth.
考虑做某事
consider...as...
把……当成……

考题在线 3 —Jack hasn't taken his piano lessons for a long time.

—He is considering _____ his piano course and spending more time on his study. [鄂州]

A. to drop　　B. to throw　　C. dropping　　D. throwing

点拨：根据语境可知，他正考虑放弃钢琴课。drop 相当于 give up。consider doing sth. 考虑做某事。

③ **figure out 弄懂，弄清楚，弄明白**

动副短语，接名词，可放两边；接代词，放中间；也可以接从句

e.g. I can't figure out what he is trying to say. 我弄不明白他想要说什么。

I can't figure him out. 我摸不透他。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★ **If neither of these things works, just leave your friend alone.**

④ **leave…alone** 让……独自留下；不打扰；不碰；不移动

e.g. Don't leave your child alone in the bathroom.

别把你的孩子独自留在浴室。

leave sb. alone 相当于 leave sb. by oneself "把某人单独留下"。

Don't leave my sister alone at home.

别把我妹妹单独留在家里。

I feel lonely among the strangers. 在陌生人当中我感到很孤独。

She was alone in that dark room. 她独自一人呆在那间黑暗的屋子里。

辨析：lonely 与 alone

① lonely "孤独的，寂寞的"，强调内心的寂寞和孤独，用作定语或表语。

② alone "独自的"，侧重于单独存在，作形容词时用作表语或后置定语。

一语辨异：I was traveling alone in the lonely mountain. I didn't feel lonely though I was alone.

我独自行走在荒凉的山里，虽孤身一人，但我并不感到寂寞。

考题在线 4 Old Mr. Green doesn't feel _____ because some students visit him regularly. [上海]

A. sadly　　B. gently

C. lonely　　D. angrily

点拨：词语辨析法。句意：老格林先生并不感到孤独，因为一些学生经常去看望他。根据句意并运用逻辑推断可知，经常有学生来探望，那一定是不感到孤独。

★ **But even if you're not friends anymore, you should still be friendly.**

⑤ **even if** 即使，纵然，尽管 作从属连词，引导让步状语从句，与 even though 同义。

e.g. Even if we are very busy, we should spend some time doing exercise every day. 即使我们很忙，我们每天也应该花一些时间锻炼。

⑥ **not…anymore** 不再……

e.g. He didn't go to her house anymore.

他不再到她家去了。

辨析：no more (not...anymore) 与 no longer (not...any longer)

We couldn't stand it anymore. 我们不能再忍受了。

① no more (not...anymore) 表示动作、状态等不再重复出现，强调数量或程度。

You are no longer a child. 你不再是个孩子了。

② no longer (not...any longer) 表示动作、状态等不再延续，强调时间。

考题在线 5 Too many people think that if they have a "fishing rod" in their life, they will _____ fear the wind and rain.

[玉林、防城港、崇左改编]

A. not longer　　B. not long　　C. no longer　　D. no long

点拨：句意：太多的人认为如果他们在生活中拥有"鱼竿"，他们就不再害怕风和雨。no longer "不再"。

考题在线答案 1. C　2. D　3. C　4. C　5. C

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见184页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. He is mad at me. Leave him _____ (alone).

2. She used to _____ (read) in the morning, but now she is used to _____ (read) at night.

3. He suggests _____ (get) there as soon as possible.

4. Why not consider _____ (do) it in another way? Maybe you'll succeed. [兰州]

5. Studying for a degree was one of the best _____ (experience) of my life. [杭州]

二、单项选择

6. The question is, does a merchant _____ how he can best serve his customers?

A. set out　　B. carry out

C. figure out　　D. put out

7. —Can you finish the job _____?

—Yes. But I feel a little _____ when I do it alone.

A. lonely; alone　　B. alone; lonely

C. lonely; lonely　　D. alone; alone

8. You will still miss the flight _____ you catch a Didi car. [潍坊]

A. even if　　B. as if

C. until　　D. before

9. —Walking more is good for our health.

—You're right. So I'd rather _____ an hour's walk to work than consider _____ a car.

A. take; driving

B. take; drive

C. take; to drive

D. to take; driving

10. During the Spring Festival, the young _____ a kowtow (磕头) to the elders, but now they only give them best wishes. [菏泽]

A. used to give

B. were used to give

C. were used to giving

三、连词成句

11. cool, a, can, us, shower, down

_____.

12. home, leave, alone, don't, baby, at, your

_____.

13. made, no, the, same, he, more, mistakes

_____.

14. make, be, used, desks, wood, to, can

_____.

15. accepting, the, engineer, it, consider, will

_____?



Life is full of possibilities.
生活充满一切可能。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 52 The Power of a Smile

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Have you ever felt lonely? Why? 你曾感觉孤独吗？为什么？
- How can you make new friends? 你怎样能交到新朋友？

Students often gather together in small, closed groups. If you are not part of a group, it can be difficult for you to be accepted. This is especially true if you can't speak to the members of the group in their language.

课文朗读

学生们经常聚集在小型的封闭的小组中。如果你不是小组的成员，你就很难被接受。如果你不能用小组成员的语言与他们谈话，情况会更甚。

This was the situation Sam faced each day as ① he went to class. Sam and his family moved to France last month. Before he arrived, he knew there would be many difficulties/ˈdɪfɪkəltiz/ ②. But they were even ③ worse than he imagined.

这是萨姆去上课时每天要面临的局面。萨姆和他的家人上个月搬到法国。在他到达之前，他就知道会有许多困难。但困难比他想象的更糟糕。

Every lunch hour, after arriving at his new school, Sam sat alone in the dining/ˈdaɪnɪŋ/ hall. He looked at all the different groups of students around him. But he had no way to let them know that he was a good person. He simply/ˈsɪmpli/ couldn't find the right words to reach them.

他到新学校后的每个午饭时间，萨姆都独自坐在餐厅里。他看着他周围不同小组的学生。但他没有办法让他们知道他是一个好人。他只是找不到正确的话语去接近他们。

Sam knew he had to find a way to ④ change the situation. Somehow/ˈsʌmhaʊ/, he had to adapt/əˈdæpt/ ⑤ to this new environment. He did a little research on the Internet and discovered that smiling is a universal/ˌjuːnɪˈvɜːsl/ language—it is understood everywhere.

萨姆知道他必须找到一种方法来改变这种局面。不管怎么样，他必须适应这个新环境。他在网上做了个小调查发现微笑是一种通用的语言——它不管在哪儿都能被理解。

One morning, as Sam was walking by a group of students, he smiled at them. A boy in the group smiled back at him. For Sam, that was a good beginning. Later, he noticed the boy coming towards him in the hall with a warm smile on his face. Sam returned the smile.

一天早上，当萨姆走过一群学生时，他朝他们微笑。群里的一个男孩也对他微笑。对萨姆来说，那是一个好的开始。后来在餐厅里，他注意到那个男孩脸上带着热情的微笑向他走来。萨姆回给他一个微笑。

Soon the boy asked Sam to join ⑥ him and his group of friends for lunch. Although Sam wasn't able to say much in French, everyone smiled and laughed. Before he knew it, Sam had a group of friends, and they all wanted to help him learn French.

很快，那个男孩邀请萨姆加入他和他的朋友们一起吃午饭。尽管萨姆不会用法语说太多，但每个人一直在笑。不知不觉地，萨姆已经有了一帮朋友，他们都想帮他学法语。

未经许可

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

That day he experienced the power of a smile. 那天他感受到了微笑的力量。

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and number the sentences in the correct order.

读课文并按正确的顺序给句子排序。

( ) Sam was really lonely in his new school.
萨姆在他的新学校的确很孤单。

( ) Sam was worried before he arrived in France. 萨姆在到达法国之前担心。

( ) When Sam smiled at another student, he received a warm smile back.
当萨姆对另一个学生微笑时，他收到一个热情的微笑。

( ) Sam tried his best to find a way to change the situation. 萨姆尽他最大的努力找到了改变这种局面的方法。

( ) Sam was invited to have lunch with a group of students.
萨姆被邀请和一组学生吃午饭。

2 Complete each passage using the information from the list below.

用下面表格里的信息完成每段短文。

I've been at my new school _____ and I still haven't made any friends. I've joined clubs, but I usually end up alone at the club while other kids gather in small groups. I don't know who to talk to or _____. 我在我的新学校 _____ 可我仍然没有交到任何朋友。我参加了俱乐部，但在俱乐部里，当其他孩子聚成小组时，我通常是单独一个人。我不知道和谁说话或 _____。

This is the perfect question for me to answer because I have changed schools six times _____ and have had to make new friends each time! Yes, it's always hard to make new friends in a new school because _____. Well, here's how I usually do it —find a person _____. Start a conversation with that person. I find this works very well. Good luck! 这是一个正适合我来回答的问题，因为我已经换过六次学校 _____ 而且每次不得不交新朋友！是的，在新学校交新朋友总是很难因为 _____。嗯，这就是我通常如何做的——找一个人 _____。和那个人开始一段对话。我发现这种方法很奏效。祝你好运!

A. since primary school 自从小学起
B. for six weeks 六周了
C. who seems nice and friendly
看起来善良且友好的人
D. what to do 做什么
E. the students are a close group
学生们是一个封闭的团体

3 Have you ever had to adapt to a new environment? How did you adapt to it? Interview your group members.

你曾经不得不去适应一个新的环境吗？你是怎样适应它的？采访你的小组成员们。

Task tips: 任务提示:

If "Yes", what did you do to adapt to it? Did you try any of these ways?
如果"是"，为了适应它你做了什么？你试过其中的一些方法吗?

- Smile at others. 对他人微笑。
- Make friends. 交朋友。
- Communicate well. 很好地交流。
- Take part in group activities. 参加小组活动。

If "No", do you have any suggestions for those who need to adapt to a new environment? 如果"不是"，你对那些需要适应新环境的人有什么建议?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★This was the situation Sam faced each day as he went to class.

① 【高频】**as** /æz/ *prep.* 像；如同；作为 *adv.* 像……一样 *conj.* 当……时；随着；因为

as 作连词，表示"当……时候；随着"，引导时间状语从句，侧重于主句与从句的动作同时进行。

e.g. You will grow wiser as you grow older.
随着年龄的增长，你会越来越聪明。

Everyone likes him as he is kind and honest. as 还可意为"因为；由于"。
由于他的善良和诚实，每个人都喜欢他。

This jacket is as new as yours. 这件夹克衫与你的一样新。

as...as... 意为"和……一样……"，表示同级比较，两个 as 中间用形容词或副词的原级。

You should work as hard as possible.
你应该尽你所能努力工作。

as...as possible = as...as one can/could 意为"尽可能……，尽某人所能……"。

I will tell you the truth as soon as you come back.
你一回来我就告诉你真相。

as soon as 意为"一……就……"，引导时间状语从句。

I will give the book to you as long as you get here on time.
只要你按时到达这儿，我就把这本书给你。

as long as 意为"只要"，引导条件状语从句。

考题在线 1 Friends are like books. You don't need a lot of them _____ they are good. [青岛]

A. or B. and C. as long as D. as soon as

点拨：考查连词辨析。or 或者；and 和，且；as long as 只要；as soon as 一……就。句意：朋友像书。只要他们是好的，你就不必拥有太多。

★Before he arrived, he knew there would be many difficulties.

② **difficulty** /'dɪfɪkəltɪ/ *n.* a problem or something that causes trouble 困难

当 difficulty 作抽象意义的"困难"讲时，用作不可数名词；当作具体意义的"困难"讲时，如难事、难点、难题等，用作可数名词，其复数形式为 difficulties。

常用短语有 have difficulty (in) doing sth.，表示"做某事有困难"。

e.g. I had great difficulty in finding your house.
我费了好大的劲儿找到你的住处。

We may meet all kinds of difficulties in the future.
将来我们可能遇到各种各样的困难。

★But they were even worse than he imagined.

③ **even** /'i:vn/ *adv.* 甚至，更，还

e.g. He speaks Japanese even better than English. 他讲日语甚至比英语还好。

She writes even more carefully than Tom does.
她甚至比汤姆写得还认真。

可用来修饰形容词、副词的比较级。

用来修饰比较级的词（组）还有：still, much, a little, a bit, a lot 等。

考题在线 2 —I think it's necessary to learn how to work in groups.
—I quite agree. Sometimes it's even _____ than grades. [重庆 A]

A. less important B. more important
C. the least important D. the most important

点拨：关键词提示法。句意：——我认为学会怎样分组工作是必要的。——我

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

很同意。这有时甚至比成绩更重要。even 修饰比较级，排除 C、D；结合句意可知答案。

同义短语为：a way of doing sth.

★Sam knew he had to find a way to change the situation.

④ **a way to…** 一种……的方法

作后置定语

e.g. The best way to learn English is practice. 学英语的最佳方法是练习。

类似的一些用动词不定式作后置定语的名词有：chance（机会），time（时间），place（地方）等。

考题在线 3 —In my opinion, animals shouldn't be kept for fun.

—I think so. Forests are the best places for animals _____.

[孝感]

A. live　　B. living　　C. to live　　D. to live in

★Somehow, he had to adapt to this new environment.

adapt 作不及物动词，与介词 to 搭配，表示"适应……"。

⑤ **adapt** /ə'dæpt/ *v.* to change sth. to make it fit for a new situation 使适应，适应，改编

敲黑板 adapt to 中 to 为介词。

e.g. I must adapt myself to the new situation. 我必须适应新形势。

Those peasant workers have adapted well to the city life.

那些农民工已经很好地适应了城市生活。

考题在线 4 那位外国人正渐渐适应宜宾的气候与食物。 [宜宾]

The foreigner is gradually getting _____ _____ the climate and food in Yibin.

辨析：join, join in, take part in 与 attend

①join+ 人或组织，"与……一起（做某事）"，"加入……"

②join in+ 活动，"参加……活动"

③take part in+ 活动，"参加……活动"

④attend "出席"正式场合，如会议、婚礼等

★Soon the boy asked Sam to join him and his group of friends for lunch.

⑥ **join** /dʒɔɪn/ *v.* 参加，加入

e.g. Will you join us for lunch?

和我们一起吃午饭好吗？

Would you like to join the club? 你想加入这个俱乐部吗？

They both joined in the race. 他们两个都参加了赛跑。

John takes part in many school activities. 约翰参加很多学校活动。

How many people will attend tomorrow's meeting?

会有多少人参加明天的会议？

考题在线 5 —Bob, I'm not good at English. What should I do?

—Why not _____ an English club to practice _____ English.

[眉山]

A. to join; speaking　　B. join; to speak

C. to join; to speak　　D. join; speaking

考题在线答案 1. C　2. B　3. D　4. used/adapted to　5. D

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见184页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示完成下列句子

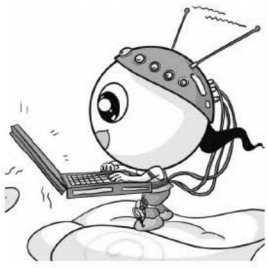
1. The d_____ h_____ in her new house is very large. She often has meals there.
2. It is s_____ a matter of time.
3. He was new here, but he a_____ to this place quickly.
4. Sue always has great courage to face d_____ and that's why we all respect her. [无锡改编]
5. We will get the money _____ (以某种方式).

二、单项选择

6. _____ a teacher, Mr. Wang thinks it's very important to teach the students how to learn.
   A. From B. With
   C. As D. Of
7. Taking a subway in Chengdu is much _____ than taking a taxi. [广元]
   A. cheap B. cheaper C. cheapest
8. Anyone who is good at singing can _____ the activity in our school. [米泉]
   A. take part in
   B. take off
   C. take out
   D. take care of
9. My friend invited me to join the art club, and I _____ the invitation with pleasure. [上海改编]
   A. received B. accepted
   C. joined D. joined in
10. Riding a bike by yourself is a good way _____ fun. We should drive less.
    A. of having B. to have
    C. in having D. Both A and B.

三、根据汉语提示完成下列句子

11. 我没有时间去看电影。
    I have no time _____ _____ the movies.
12. 她演奏得不如她姐姐。
    She doesn't play _____ _____ _____ her sister.
13. 恐怕我明天不能参加你的婚礼了。
    I am afraid that I can't _____ your wedding tomorrow.
14. 我注意到这个男孩帮助王奶奶做了家务。
    I noticed the boy _____ Granny Wang do the housework.
15. 我到这所学校才几天，我得适应这个新环境。
    I have been at the school for several days. I have to _____ _____ the new environment.



Success is not delivered but earned through efforts.
成功并非唾手可得，必须靠自己去努力争取。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 53 Working in Groups

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you like group work? 你喜欢小组活动吗?
- What can you do to help your group work well together?
  为了帮助你的小组一起顺利地工作你会做什么?

"OK class," says Ms. Liu. "It's time for our group project. Let's get to work!" "好了，同学们，" 刘老师说："到了（进行）我们小组课题的时间了。让我们开始工作吧！"

课文朗读

Yi Han is the leader of one group. She is not looking forward to ① working with her group because a boy named Li Tian is always absent /'æbsənt/ ② from the group meetings. He doesn't follow the rules, and he refuses ③ to do any work. This slows the whole group down ④. 依晗是一个小组的组长。她不期待和她的小组一起工作，因为一个叫李天的男孩总是缺席小组会议。他不遵守规则，而且他拒绝做任何工作。这拖慢了整个小组的进度。

Yi Han considers telling Ms. Liu about these problems, but she doesn't want to get Li Tian in trouble/'trʌbl/ ⑤. Instead, she decides to talk to him and find out what the problem is. She says, "Everyone is working hard on our project. But so far ⑥, you have done nothing. Is there something wrong?" 依晗想把这些问题告诉刘老师，但是她不想让李天陷入困境。相反，她决定和他谈一谈并且找出问题是什么。她说："每个人都为了我们的课题努力工作。但到目前为止，你什么也没有做。有什么问题吗？"

Li Tian is quiet for a few seconds, and finally says, "It's not that I don't want to be in the group. Sometimes, I don't really understand the things we're learning. I know it's not fair, but I don't want to say something stupid, so I do nothing." 李天沉默了几秒钟，最后说："不是我不想在这个小组。有时我不太明白我们学的是什么。我知道这不公平，但我不想说些愚蠢的话，所以我什么也不做。"

Now Yi Han understands. Li Tian isn't lazy—he just needs help! "From now on ⑦," she says, "I will do my best to help you feel more confident. Then you can do your share, and it will be fair for everyone." "Thank you! I'll try hard to do my part," says Li Tian.

现在依晗明白了。李天不是懒惰——他只是需要帮助！她说："从现在开始，我会尽我最大的努力帮助你，使你感觉更加自信。然后你就能做好你分内的工作，那样对每个人都很公平。"李天说："谢谢你！我会努力做好我的分内工作的。"

Yi Han feels happy. She realizes that talking about problems is better than keeping them as secrets/'si:krɪts/ ⑧. 依晗感觉很高兴。她意识到谈论问题要比把问题保密更好。

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and tick the correct answers to the questions below.

读课文并勾出下列问题的正确答案。

1. The group is working slowly. Yi Han wants to solve the problem. What does she do?
   这个小组进展很慢。依晗想解决这个问题。她做了什么?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

□ Tell the teacher. 告诉老师。

□ Talk to Li Tian. 和李天谈话。

2. Li Tian has some difficulties. What are they? 李天有一些困难。它们是什么?

□ He doesn't want to be in the group.
他不想在这个小组里。

□ He doesn't understand the things they're learning. 他不明白他们正在学的内容。

3. Knowing Yi Han decides to help him, what will Li Tian do?
知道依晗决定帮助他，李天会做什么?

□ He will try hard to do his part.
他将会努力做好他的分内工作。

□ He thinks it's not fair to do his part.
他认为做他的分内工作是不公平的。

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words or phrases in the box.
用方框中单词或短语的正确形式填空。

so far 到目前为止 trouble 困难 be absent from 缺席 secret 秘诀 look forward to 期望

1. Don't miss "Gardening with Mary"on Saturday afternoons.Mary Green will share her rose growing _____ with you. 不要错过星期六下午的"和玛丽一起做园艺"。玛丽·格林将和你分享她的关于玫瑰种植的 _____。
2. Cathy _____ school because she had a bad headache.
凯西 _____ 学校是因为她头很疼。
3. I wrote a letter to Rose. I'm _____ her reply.
我给罗丝写了封信。我_____她的回信。
4. —How is your second-hand laptop?
你的二手笔记本电脑怎么样?
—_____, so good. _____，很好。
5. He always gets himself into _____ by doing things carelessly.
他做事粗心，总是使他自己陷入_____。

3 Have you ever had any problems while working in a group? How did you solve them? Does communication play an important role? Discuss it in your group. 当在一个小组里工作时，你曾有过难题吗? 你怎样解决它们的? 交流起到重要的作用了吗? 在你的小组里讨论这个问题。

Learn to learn 学会学习

A group works well if every member works hard. To make a group work well, it's best to give each member a role. Take a group of four as an example. In the group, there should be an organizer, a recorder, a speaker and a rule keeper. Then each member can do his/her share. 如果每个成员都努力工作，一个小组就做得好。为了使小组工作做好，最好给每个成员（安排）一个角色。以一组四人为例，小组里应该有组织者、记录者、发言者和规矩管理者。那么每个成员就会做他/她分内的工作。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★She is not looking forward to working with her group because a boy named Li Tian is always absent from the group meetings.

① look forward to 期望 → 短语中 to 为介词，后面常接名词、代词或动名词，不能接动词原形。

e.g. The students are looking forward to an English party.
学生们正在盼望着一个英语聚会。
I'm looking forward to going abroad. 我盼望着出国。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线1 —Do you have any plans for the holiday?

—Yes. I'm planning to travel to Jiuzhaigou. I'm looking forward to _____ the colourful lakes and amazing waterfalls. [南京]

A. see B. seeing C. sees D. saw

点拨：look forward to 指"期望"，短语中 to 是介词，后接名词、代词或动名词。

② **absent** /'æbsənt/ *adj.* 缺席的，不在的；/æb'sent/ *v.* 缺席，不参加

e.g. How many students are absent today? 今天有多少学生缺席?

He absented himself from the meeting yesterday. 他昨天没出席会议。

Li Ming was absent from school yesterday. 李明昨天没来上学。

He returned home after an absence of two years. 他离家两年后回来了。

be absent from 缺席

absence n. 缺席，不在

★**He doesn't follow the rules, and he refuses to do any work.**

③ **refuse** /rɪ'fju:z/ *v.* 拒绝

e.g. When I asked him to leave, he refused. 当我要求他离开时，他拒绝了。

He refused to work for her. 他拒绝为她工作。

She can't refuse him anything. 她对他百依百顺。

refuse to do sth. 拒绝做某事

refuse 后可接双宾语

考题在线2 Vivian refuses _____ her children to the weekend training centre for extra classes. [上海]

A. to send B. sending C. sent D. sends

点拨：句意：薇薇安拒绝送她的孩子们去周末培训中心参加额外的课程。refuse to do sth. 意为"拒绝做某事"。

★**This slows the whole group down.**

④ **slow down**(使)慢下来，(使)减速；(使)放松；延误

e.g. The growth of population has slowed down. 人口的增长已经慢了下来。

Slow your car down as you approach the school gate.

驶近学校大门时，要放慢车速。

●动副短语，名词作宾语，放两边；代词作宾语必须放中间。

考题在线3 He was alive! So I _____ (slow) down, turned around and stopped the car to save the man. [泰州改编]

★**...but she doesn't want to get Li Tian in trouble.**

⑤ **trouble** /'trʌbl/ *n.* 麻烦，困难，忧虑 *v.* 使烦恼，麻烦

e.g. I have a little trouble learning English grammar.

我在学英语语法方面有一点儿困难。

Don't give me trouble when I am reading. 当我读书时不要来麻烦我。

I often have trouble with my teeth. 我常常牙痛。

They are in trouble now. 他们现在处于困境中。

have trouble/difficulty (in) doing sth. 做某事有困难

give sb. trouble 给某人造成麻烦

have trouble with... 有……的病痛，因……而苦恼

be in trouble 处于困境之中

考题在线4 —Sally is my best friend. She is always there whenever I'm _____.

—Yeah. A friend in need is a friend indeed. [福州]

A. in order B. in trouble C. in public

点拨：语境推理法。根据答语"患难中的朋友才是真正的朋友"可知，每当

方法真题练

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

自己身陷困境时，萨莉总是在帮助自己。

名词

一语辨异：Don't trouble trouble until trouble troubles you. 不要自寻烦恼。

动词

★But so far, you have done nothing.

so far = up to now/ until now，常用于句首或句末，句子常用现在完成时。

⑥ **so far 到目前为止**

e.g. So far I haven't got any help from him.

迄今为止，我还没有得到过他的任何帮助。

考题在线 5 Last year our class set up Reading Corner. So far, we _____ more than 200 books. [海南]

A. were reading　　B. have read　　C. will read

点拨：考查时态。句意：去年我们班建立了阅读角，迄今为止我们已经读了200多本书。so far 现在完成时的标志。

★"From now on," she says, "I will do my best to…"

此短语常用于一般将来时中。

⑦ **from now on 从现在开始**

e.g. From now on I'll be more careful. 从今以后，我会更加小心。

★She realizes that talking about problems is better than keeping them as secrets.

⑧ **secret** /'si:krɪt/ *n.* known about by only a few people and kept hidden from others **秘密**；*adj.* **秘密的**

in secret = secretly 秘密地

keep a secret 保守秘密

keep sth. a secret 将某事保密

make a secret of 隐瞒

e.g. I can't tell you where I'm going. It's a secret.

我不能告诉你我将要到哪儿去。这是个秘密。

He kept it a secret. 他将此事保密。

They made a secret of going to the island. 他们隐瞒了去那个岛的事情。

They walked into the factory in secret. 他们秘密地走进了那个工厂。

考题在线 6 As Molly walked back home, she decided to tell Dad her _____ (秘密). [北京改编]

一语辨异：A secret man told me in secret to keep the secret in a secret place. 一个神秘的人在一个秘密的地点秘密地告诉我要保守这个秘密。

核心素养之文化意识

培养"保守秘密"素养

◆谁都想要有属于自己的秘密，也应该替别人保守秘密(keep the secret)。千万不要透露秘密(reveal the secret)给别人。否则的话，你在别人心目中的好印象会受到影响，你将会失去别人的信任(trust)。

◆犹太人把保守别人的秘密就看得非常重要，他们认为做人就应该能够做到守口如瓶(remain tight-lipped)，这样的人才值得与之成为朋友。

【素养行动】在日常生活中，如果你的朋友告诉你一个秘密，他只想和你分享(share)，你一定要替他保守。

【素养行动结果】学会为朋友保守秘密，建立健康的友谊。

Opportunity only favors those who are always well-prepared.
机会只垂青于有准备的人。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. A　3. slowed　4. B　5. B　6. secret

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见184页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成下列单词

1. No one is a_____ today except Mike, as he is still in hospital.

2. They may have some t_____ in arriving here, for they are new in town.

3. The s_____ of success lies in hard work.

4. It's not f_____ for me to be left alone at home. I can also be helpful on the trip.

5. I didn't r_____ that he was hurt by me until tears came out of his eyes.

二、单项选择

6. —Tommy, you can never let others know what I have told you today.
—Don't worry. I will keep the _____. [丽水]

A. secret B. money
C. address D. grade

7. Girl: I'm _____ the trip to the mountains next weekend.
Boy: Me too. [东营改编]

A. taking pride in B. taking care of
C. looking back at D. looking forward to

8. The man often has trouble _____ his wife.

A. with B. in
C. for D. on

9. Before turning, you should _____ your car.

A. pull over B. slow down
C. knock down D. think over

10. So far fifty people _____ in the earthquake.

A. died B. were dead
C. has been dead D. have died

三、连词成句

11. have, share, we, our, done

_____.

12. are, from, always, class, absent, you

_____.

13. soldiers, secret, left, in, at, the, night

_____.

14. so, his, he, hasn't, parents, far, seen

_____.

15. forward, we, looking, to, his, are, coming

_____.



The more we love our friends, the less we flatter them.
对朋友爱得越深，奉承得就越少。

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 54 How Embarrassing!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How do you feel if you meet an old friend and he or she can't remember your name?
  如果你遇见一位老朋友，而他或她记不起你的名字了，你是什么感觉?
- Have you ever gotten back in touch with ① an old friend? 你曾经和你的老朋友重新联系吗?

Dear Diary, 亲爱的日记，

This week I had an embarrassing moment/ˈməʊmənt/ at a bookstore. I ran into ② an old friend named Gao Yuan. When he tapped/tæpt/ ③ me on the shoulder and said my name, I couldn't figure out who he was. He seemed ④ familiar/fəˈmɪliə/ but I forgot his name. I felt awful. We chatted for a while. Finally I had to admit ⑤ that I couldn't remember his name. Before I could say sorry, he said he had to go and waved goodbye. 这周，我在一家书店经历了一个令人尴尬的时刻。我偶然遇到了一个叫高远的老朋友。当他轻拍了一下我的肩膀并说出我的名字时，我认不出他是谁。他看起来很面熟，但是我忘了他的名字。我感到糟糕透了。我们聊了一会儿。最后我不得不承认我想不起他的名字。在我说对不起之前，他说他得走了并（向我）挥手告别。

课文朗读

I felt bad, so I talked with Wang Mei about it. She said that she once had a similar experience. She forgot an old friend's name when that friend returned to China after many years abroad. Wang Mei was a little embarrassed, too, but her friend didn't mind. She just reminded ⑥ Wang Mei of her name and they had a good, long chat. 我感觉很不好，于是我和王梅说了这件事。她说她曾经也有相似的经历。当她的一个在国外许多年的老朋友后来回到中国时，她忘记了那个老朋友的名字。王梅也有点尴尬，但是她的朋友并不介意。她只是提醒王梅她的名字并且她们进行了一次长时间的友好的交谈。

After talking to Wang Mei, I felt better. I called Gao Yuan that evening. He was happy to hear from me, and we had a good conversation. We also made plans to play ping-pong together next weekend. 和王梅交谈后，我感觉好多了。那晚我给高远打了电话。他很高兴接到我的电话，而且我们进行了一次愉快的交谈。我们还计划下周末一起打乒乓球。

Yay, I got back an old friend!
呦，我挽回了一个老朋友!

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the diary entry and retell Li Ming's embarrassing experience using the hints below.

读日记条目并用下面的提示复述李明的尴尬经历。

run into... 偶然遇到……　familiar... 熟悉的……
couldn't remember... 想不起……
awful... 糟糕的……　chat... 聊天……

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the phrases in the box.

用方框中短语的正确形式填空。

run into 偶然遇到　return to 返回
hear from 收到（来信等）
make plans 制订计划

1. After living abroad for 30 years, the couple _____ the small town. 在国外生活了三十年后，这对夫妇 _____ 小镇。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. We'd love to go to the party, but we _____ for that day. 我们很想去参加聚会，但是我们那天 _____。

3. They _____ their son yesterday. They were very happy.
他们昨天 _____ 他们儿子。他们很高兴。

4. I _____ an old friend on my way to school yesterday.
昨天在我去上学的路上我 _____ 一个老朋友。

3 Listen to some kids talking about their most embarrassing moments and fill in the blanks.
听一些孩子谈论令他们最尴尬的时刻并填空。



One day I was in class. The whole class was very quiet. _____ my cell phone rang. Many heads _____ my direction. The teacher walked up to me. My face turned red. I felt so nervous that ⑦ I could _____ breathe. Then I heard myself say in a shaking voice "You want it?" How embarrassing!!! 有一天我在上课。整个班级都很安静。_____ 我的手机响了。许多头 _____ 我的方向。老师走向我。我的脸变红了。我感到如此紧张以至于我 _____ 呼吸。后来我听到我自己用颤抖的声音说"你要吗？"多尴尬！！！

My most embarrassing moment was during an award ceremony at the end of the year. I was sitting at the front. The host announced a special _____ and I heard my name, so I went up on the _____. It turned out that it was the other girl. The _____ part was walking back to my seat in front of everyone! Imagine how embarrassed I was! 我最尴尬的时刻是在一次年终颁奖仪式上。我坐在前面。主持人宣布了一个特别的 _____，而且我听到了我的名字，于是我走上 _____。结果却是另一个女孩。_____ 部分是我在所有人面前走回我的座位！想象一下我是多么尴尬！

4 Have you had any embarrassing moments? Write about them.
你曾有过尴尬的时刻吗？写一写它们。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点批注　·考点应用

★Have you ever gotten back in touch with an old friend?

① get in touch with sb. 同某人取得联系　强调动作

e.g. I couldn't get in touch with my old friends after my phone was stolen.
我的手机被盗之后，我不能和我的老朋友取得联系了。

get back in touch with sb. 意为"同某人重新取得联系"。

Keep/Stay in touch!
保持联系！

be in touch with=keep/stay in touch with，意为"和……有/保持联系"，都是强调一种状态。

★I ran into an old friend named Gao Yuan.

② run into 意为"偶然遇见"，还有"流入……；刺入；撞在……上"之意。

e.g. Don't run around in the street. 不要在街上四处乱跑。
He has run away. 他已经逃跑了。
He is running after the ball on the street. It is dangerous.

与 run 有关的短语：
- run around 四处乱跑
- run away 逃跑，逃走
- run after 追逐，追求
- run out 耗尽，用完

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

他在街上追球，这很危险。

My money ran out. 我的钱用完了。

考题在线 1 He _____ an old friend of his at the supermarket.

A. ran away　　B. ran after　　C. ran out　　D. ran into

★When he tapped me on the shoulder and said my name, …

③ **tap** /tæp/ *v.* to hit sb./sth. quickly and lightly 轻敲，轻拍

e.g. Someone tapped at the door. 有人轻轻叩门。

tap, pat, hit, pull, take 等词表达拍、打、拉、抓某身体部位时，常常搭配不同的介词

e.g. He hit his friend on the head with the umbrella.

他用雨伞打他朋友的头。

表示身体部位的词前都要用定冠词 the，不能用形容词性物主代词。

★He seemed familiar but I forgot his name.

④ **seem** /si:m/ *v.* 好像，似乎

e.g. Everything seems easy. 一切似乎很容易。

He seems an honest man. 他看上去是个老实人。

The math problem seems to be very difficult to work out.

这道数学题似乎很难解答。

It seems that he is hungry. 他似乎是饿了。

seem 的用法：
- 后接形容词
- 后接名词
- 后接不定式
- It seems that… 好像……

考题在线 2 As our children get bigger, our house _____ get smaller.

[株洲改编]

A. like to　　B. seems to　　C. seemed to　　D. seems like

★Finally I had to admit that I couldn't remember his name.

⑤ **admit** /əd'mɪt/ *v.* 承认，招供

e.g. She refuses to admit the truth. 她拒不承认事实。

He admitted breaking the window. 他承认打破了窗户。

Don't be afraid to admit to your mistakes. 不要怕认错。

I admit that I was wrong. 我承认我错了。

admit 的用法：
- admit sth. 承认某事
- admit doing sth. 承认做过某事
- admit to sth.（常指勉强）承认
- admit（to sb.）that…（向某人）承认……

考题在线 3 Though it's hard for me to _____ that I have fallen behind you, Alice, that's a fact!

A. do　　B. admit　　C. allow　　D. see

点拨：考查动词词义辨析。句意：尽管我很难承认，我已经落后于你，艾丽斯，但是事实就是这样！ do 做；admit 承认；allow 允许；see 看到。

★She just reminded Wang Mei of her name and they had a good, long chat.

⑥ **remind** /rɪ'maɪnd/ *v.* 提醒

e.g. The picture reminded me of my childhood.

这张照片使我想起了我的童年。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

remind 的用法：

① remind sb. of sb./sth. 使某人想起某人、某事

② remind sb. to do sth. 提醒某人做某事

③ remind sb.+that 从句 使某人想起……

The smell reminds me of France. 这股气味使我想起了法国。

My parents often remind me to study hard.

我父母经常提醒我要努力学习。

I remind her that she must go home before dark.

我提醒她必须在天黑之前回家。

考题在线 4 —I'm afraid I might forget to buy the bread after work.

—Don't worry. I will _____ you then. [安徽]

A. notice B. allow C. remind D. promise

点拨：句意：——恐怕在下班后我可能会忘记买面包。——别担心。我到时会提醒你的。notice 通知；allow 允许；remind 提醒；promise 发誓。

★I felt so nervous that I could…

⑦【高频】so… that… 如此…… 以至于……

so…that… 用来引导结果状语从句。其中的 so 是副词，后跟形容词或其他副词，that 是连词，后跟从句。

e.g. This book is so interesting that everyone wants to read it.

这本书非常有趣，每个人都想读它。

The girl is so young that she can't go to school.

→ The girl is too young to go to school. 这个女孩太小了，不能上学。

当从句的主语和主句的主语一致，且 that 从句是否定式时可与 too…to 句式转换。

The question is so hard that we can't answer it.

→ The question is too hard for us to answer.

这个问题太难了，我们回答不上来。

当从句的主语和主句的主语不一致，且 that 从句是否定式时可与 too…for sb. to do 句式转换。

The man is so strong that he can lift the heavy box.

→The man is strong enough to lift the heavy box.

这个男人很强壮，他能举起这个重箱子。

当从句的主语和主句的主语一致，且 that 从句是肯定式时可与 enough to do 句式转换。

The question is so easy that we can answer it.

→The question is easy enough for us to answer.

这个问题很简单，我们能回答。

当从句的主语和主句的主语不一致，且 that 从句是肯定式时可与 enough for sb. to do 句式转换。

考题在线 5 —Xiao Lin, this desk is _____ heavy _____ I can't move it.

—Don't worry. I'll help you. [湘西]

A. such; that B. too; to C. so; that

点拨：考查固定短语辨析。句意：——肖林，这张桌子如此沉重我搬不动。——别担心，我会帮你的。such+ 形容词 + 名词 +that 从句，表示"如此……以至于……"；too+ 形容词 +to+ 动词原形，表示"太……而不能做……"；so+ 形容词 +that 从句，表示"如此……以至于……"。第一个空格后 heavy 是形容词，应排除 A；第二个空后是一个句子，应排除 B。

考题在线答案 1. D 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. C

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见185页)

一、根据汉语提示完成下列句子

1. When I _____ _____ (遇到) a problem, I asked Uncle Mark for help.

2. I have _____ _____ _____ _____ (与……有联系) him since he came back to China.

3. I'm so glad to _____ _____ (收到……的来信) you.

4. He _____ _____ _____ (对……熟悉) the computer. He can type without looking at the keyboard.

5. He always _____ _____ _____ (提醒我) take some medicine.

二、单项选择

6. —What do you think of the movie *Fang Hua*?
—It is moving and it _____ my grandma _____ the life in the countryside. [自贡]

A. reminds; of
B. lets; down
C. wakes; up

7. I got in touch _____ friends three months ago.

A. with B. to
C. about D. in

8. In the street, someone tapped me _____ shoulder.

A. in my B. on my
C. on the D. in the

9. —What do you think of the new movie *Wandering Earth* (《流浪地球》)?
—It's _____ wonderful _____ I really like it. [黄冈]

A. so; that B. such; that
C. too; to D. enough; to

10. He _____ to his mother that he was wrong at last after he heard what his mother had said.

A. permitted B. admitted
C. realized D. knew

三、按要求完成下列句子

11. He seems to be fond of pop music. (改为同义句)
It _____ _____ he is fond of pop music.

12. The girl is too young to dress herself. (改为同义句) [重庆]
The girl is _____ young _____ she _____ dress herself.

13. Wang Bing was very glad to receive a letter from his old classmates. (改为同义句) [重庆]
Wang Bing was very glad to _____ _____ his old classmates.

14. Tina was so careless that she made lots of mistakes in the exam. (改为简单句) [巴中]
Tina wasn't _____ _____ to avoid making lots of mistakes in the exam.

15. plan, have, you, tomorrow, a, for, made, (连词成句)
_____?

苹果德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary 构建你的词汇

Ⅰ. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the given words.

用所给单词的适当形式完成句子。

1. In the past two years, they have gone through many _____ (difficult). 在过去的两年里，他们经历了很多的 _____（困难的）。
2. It's good for friends to speak _____ (direct) to one another. 朋友之间 _____（直接的）说出来是好的。
3. We need to be a good _____ (listen) if we want to ask right questions.
   我们需要做一个好的 _____（听），如果我们想问正确的问题的话。
4. They don't talk to each other anymore.There might be some _____ (understand) between them. 他们不再和对方说话。他们之间可能有一些 _____（理解）。
5. We are learning from each other. We need good _____ (communicate). 我们正相互学习。我们需要好的 _____（沟通）。

Ⅱ. Fill in the blanks with the phrases in the box. 用方框中的词组填空。

figure out 弄懂；弄明白　get along with 与……相处　succeed in 在……成功 keep one's promise 守信　adapt to 适应

1. You'd better _____ to meet your cousin at the airport.
   你最好 _____ 去机场接你的表妹。
2. If you can _____ the problem, try to find a way to solve it. 如果你能 _____ 这个问题，尽力去找一种方法解决它。
3. You have to be happy with yourself before you can _____ others. 在你能与他人 _____ 之前，你必须自娱自乐。
4. I hope you can _____ the new environment quickly.
   我希望你能尽快 _____ 新的环境。
5. All of us want to _____ life.
   我们所有人都想 _____ 生活。

Grammar in Use 语法应用

Ⅰ. Fill in the blanks with "who", "that"or "what". 用"who"、"that"或"what"填空。

1. He is telling the police _____ he saw last night on the street.
   他在给警察讲昨天晚上他在街上见到的事情。
2. Do you like the book _____ I gave you yesterday? 你喜欢我昨天给你的书吗?
3. The girl _____ you saw last night is my little cousin. 你昨晚见的女孩是我的小表妹。

Ⅱ. Fill in the blanks with "when", "before", "because", " if " or "though". 用"when"、"before"、"because"、"if"或"though"填空。

1. You should clean your house carefully _____ the guests arrive.
   你应该在客人到达 _____ 仔细打扫你的房子。
2. _____ it rains, the football game will be cancelled.
   _____ 天下雨，足球比赛将被取消。
3. He had to leave _____ he wanted to stay. 他不得不离开_____他想留下来。
4. We cannot go on a picnic today _____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

the wind is too strong.

我们今天不能去野餐 _____ 风太大了。

5. The young mother saw her baby playing with a new doll _____ she came home.

_____ 年轻的妈妈回到家，她看见她的婴儿正在玩一个新玩具娃娃。

Listening and Speaking 听力与口语

I. Listen to the passage and fill in the blanks.

听短文并填空。

There are a few different reasons why people use small talk. The most obvious is to break an uncomfortable _____. Another reason, however, is simply to _____ time. That is why it is so _____ to make small talk when you are waiting for something. Some people make small talk in order to be _____. You may not feel like _____ with anyone at a party, but it is rude to just sit in a corner by yourself. After being _____ to someone new, you probably don't know much about this person. So to show a polite _____, you have to start with some small talk. 人们开展闲聊有几个不同的原因。最常见的是打破不太舒适的 _____。然而另一个原因仅仅是 _____ 时间。那就是为什么它是如此 _____，当你等某事的时候会闲聊。有些人闲聊是为了 _____。你可能不想和聚会上的任何人 _____，但是自己独自坐在一个角落里是不礼貌的。在对某个新认识的人 _____ 之后，你可能对这个人不太了解。因此出于礼貌 _____，你必须以闲聊开始。



II. Work in groups. Talk about your opinions on making new friends.

小组活动。讨论你关于交新朋友的观点。

Putting It All Together 综合运用

I. Read the passage and answer the questions.

读短文并回答问题。

It is useful to learn how to make small talk. It is an important social skill. It helps to make people feel relaxed and start a conversation when they meet for the first time. 学习怎样闲聊是有用的。它是一个重要的社交技能。它帮助人们在初次见面时感到轻松并开始一次谈话。

The topics for small talk are different in different countries. But usually the topics are general rather than personal.In the U. S., people sometimes talk about the weather when they make small talk. "It's a nice day today, isn't it?" This kind of questions helps you begin a conversation because they are general questions that anyone can reply to. 在不同的国家，闲聊的话题也是不同的。但通常这些话题是普遍的而不是个人的。在美国，人们闲聊有时会谈论天气。"今天天气很好，不是吗？"这类问题帮你展开谈话，因为它们是普遍的问题，任何人都可以回答。

Next time when you want to make small talk, turn a statement into a question.You are sure to get an answer and a conversation starter.

下次当你想闲聊时，把一个陈述变为一个问题。你肯定能得到一个回答以及一个谈话的开头。

1. Why is small talk an important social skill?

为什么闲聊是一个重要的社交技能?

_____

2. Why is the weather a good topic for small talk? 为什么天气是闲聊的好话题?

_____

3. What is a good way to make small talk?

进行闲聊的好的方法是什么?

_____

II. Interview your classmates about different situations where they started a conversation with small talk. Write down their responses.

采访你的同学关于他们通过闲聊而开始交谈的不同情景。写下他们的答复。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Self-Evaluation 自我测评

Find more examples from this unit. Then mark your stars.

从本单元中找出·更多的例子。然后标记你的星星。

Talking about Interpersonal Communication

谈论人际交流

It's always better to get things out in the open—talk about a problem, come to a solution or move on. 把事情公开总是较好的——谈论一个问题，得出一个解决方法或者换话题。___

I know how to carry on interpersonal communication. 我知道怎样继续人际交流。

☆ ☆ ☆ ☆ ☆

I Am Sorry 对不起

If I could turn the clock back,
如果时光可以倒流，
Or erase our terrible fight,
或者抹去我们令人不快的争辩，
I'd do it in an instant,
我将马上做这件事，
And find a way to make it right.
然后找一个方法把事情做对。
Sometimes, my friend, we say things,
我的朋友，有时我们说一些事情，
That we do not mean to say.
我们本意并不打算说那些。
So we had a fight,
于是我们吵了一架，
Because of the words I said today.
因为我今天说的话。
I remember once, when we were small,
我记得曾经当我们还小时，
You helped when I was sad.
我伤心时你会帮我。
You stayed and played with me,
你陪着我，和我玩，
In good times and in bad.
在好时光和不好的时光里。
And so, my friend, I'm sorry.
因此，我的朋友，对不起。
When we fight, we never win.
当我们争辩时，我们从未胜利。
Let's meet and talk it over,
让我们见面并好好聊聊，
And let's be friends again.
让我们再次成为朋友吧。
My mum says communication,
我妈妈说交流，
And talking is the way.
和交谈是方法所在。
So here's my hand of friendship.
因此这是我的友谊之手。
Will you be my friend today?
你愿意今天成为我的朋友吗?

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

从属连词

考点1 引导名词性从句的从属连词

考向：引导名词性从句的从属连词有 that, whether 和 if，这些连接词在句中不充当任何句子成分。

e.g. She said that under no circumstances would she allow us to skip the meeting.
她说怎么样都会让我们参加会议。（宾语从句）

Whether he will come or not is unknown.
没人知道他是否要来。（主语从句）

考点2 引导状语从句的从属连词

考向一：引导时间状语从句的从属连词有 when, while, as, after, before, since, till/until,

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

once 等。

e.g. I will tell the news to her when I see her.
我看见她时就会告诉她这一消息。
I hadn't realized that I was wrong until you told me all about it.
直到你告诉我这一切，我才意识到我错了。

考题在线 1 —_____ did the rainstorm come?
—While we _____ a physics lesson yesterday. [凉山]
A. When; have had B. While; are having
C. When; were having D. While; have

点拨：考查 when 和 while 引导的时间状语从句的时态 。问句中的 come 是短暂性动词，应由 when 来引导。答语是 while 引导的时间状语从句，应用过去进行时。

考向二：引导原因状语从句的从属连词有 as, because, since 等。

e.g. He didn't go to school because he was ill.
他因为生病没去上学。
Since you know all about it, tell me, please. 既然你都知道，那就请告诉我吧。

考题在线 2 —Did you call Michael back?
—I didn't need to, _____ I'll see him tomorrow. [呼和浩特]
A. unless B. because C. when D. though

点拨：考查连词辨析。句意：——你给迈克尔回电话了吗？——我不需要回，因为明天我将会看见他。unless 除非，如果不，引导条件状语从句；because 因为，引导原因状语从句；when 当……时候，引导时间状语从句；though 虽然，引导让步状语从句。横线后面是不需要回电话的原因。

考向三：引导条件状语从句的从属连词有 if, unless, as long as 等。

e.g. He will not come unless he is invited.
除非他被邀请，否则他是不会来的。
You'll be late for class if you don't hurry.
如果你不快点儿，你上课就会迟到。

考题在线 3 —Let's go to climb Langshan Mountain this Saturday _____ the weather is fine.
—Good idea! [邵阳]
A. though B. if C. unless

点拨：考查从属连词辨析。句意：——如果天气好的话，这个星期六我们去爬崀山吧。——好主意！though“虽然”，引导让步状语从句；if“如果”，引导条件状语从句；unless“除非”，引导条件状语从句。分析句意知，后面是前面的条件，所以应用 if 引导条件状语从句。

考向四：引导目的状语从句的从属连词有 so that, in order that 等。

e.g. I came here so that I could take a good look at the new bridge.
我来这儿，为的是能好好看看新桥。

考题在线 4 We should take care of the earth _____ we can make a better world to live in. [广东]
A. so that B. until C. even if D. while

点拨：考查从属连词用法。so that 以便，引导目的状语从句；until 直到……，引导时间状语从句；even if 即使，与 even though 同义，引导让步状语从句；while 当……时候，引导时间状语从句。理解前后句意：我们应该保护地球；我们能创造一个更好的世界来居住。由句意知，后面表目的。

考向五：引导结果状语从句的从属连词有 so that, so…that/such…that 等。

e.g. It gave him such a shock that his face turned white.
这使他很震惊以至于他的脸都白了。
The teacher explained very clearly so that we all understood.
老师解释得如此清楚，因此我们都懂了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 5 The story is _____ interesting _____ everybody likes it very much. [新疆]

A. very; that　　B. so; that

C. such; that　　D. such; because

点拨：考查连词用法。句意：这个故事如此有趣以至于每个人都非常喜欢它。根据句意，应选固定搭配 so...that 或 such...that, such 后面只能接名词，而 interesting 是形容词，形容词和副词前都应该用 so。

考向六：引导让步状语从句的从属连词有 though/although，even if/even though，however，whatever，whoever 等。

e.g. He felt all this, even if he didn't find words to express it.

这一切他都感觉到了，尽管他找不出词来表达。

There was never any time for Kate to feel lonely, even though she was an only child.

尽管凯特是独生女，但她从未觉得孤单。

考题在线 6 _____ he was very tired, he continued working in his office. [泉州]

A. Because　　B. Since　　C. Although

小贴士：状语从句三要点，时间，原因和条件；从句如果表时间，after，before，when 常见；状语从句表原因，because 一马来当先；状语从句表条件，if 引导放前面；主句通常前面走，从句紧紧跟在后。从句如在主句前，从句之后加逗点。

考题在线答案 1. C　2. B　3. B　4. A　5. B　6. C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见185页)

听力技巧

预读定位法

听力过程

课文听力

听本课 Listening and Speaking I 完成以下各题

1. There are _____ reasons why people use small talk.
2. The most obvious is to break an uncomfortable _____.
3. That is why it is so _____ to make small talk when you are waiting for something.
4. Some people make small talk _____ be polite.
5. You may not feel like chatting with anyone at a party, but it is _____ to just sit in a corner by yourself.

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

The passage is about tips for good communication. Here are the tips:　引起下文

Remember other people's names. Make a great effort to do this when you first meet someone new. This will make him/her comfortable.

Smile. Make sure you smile and greet others in a friendly way. Smiling can be a passport to good communication.

Find a proper topic. To find a topic you are interested in, you can talk about the weather, sports, news and so on.　加波浪线部分分别描述具体建议

Be a good listener. People are happy to talk to someone who is listening carefully. Making eye contact is a must while you are listening.

Be honest. Tell people the truth and don't tell lies.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Keep your promises. People trust those who always keep their promises.

单元话题

假如你是 Mark（马克），你的朋友托尼（Tony）发电子邮件向你请教如何交朋友的问题，请你给他回复一封电子邮件提几点建议，词数：80 左右。

内容包括：

1. 在小区内玩耍时寻找小孩，你可以主动与他们交流并成为新朋友，告知家长你的想法；
2. 请求父母带你去图书馆或一些公共场所，既可以认识更多伙伴又可以参加文体活动；
3. 每逢星期天，可外出参加活动，从而交到朋友。

要求：1. 涵盖所有要点，意思连贯，符合逻辑，可适当增加细节；

2. 卷面整洁，书写规范工整。不得逐字翻译。

Dear Tony,

It's hard to make new friends. However, there are lots of things you can do.

_____

_____

_____

_____

It takes time and patience. I hope you will find a best friend soon!

Yours,

Mark

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

认真阅读写作要求，可获得以下写作信息：(1) 体裁：本文应为议论文。(2) 时态：用一般现在时和一般将来时。(3) 提示：写建议多用祈使句。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"三要素法"写提建议类文章

若写作话题是关于如何向别人提建议的，可先说明事实 (fact)，再发表观点 (opinion)，最后给出建议 (suggestion)。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

三要素

1. Facts: It's hard to make new friends./How to make new friends?/How to greet...?
2. Opinion: It's important for a person to get along well with others./To have new friends is fun...
3. Suggestions: to find some kids to play with together/ask for parents' help/ go to public places/to take part in activities/to be active...

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	however, communicate, take, club, activity, patience
短语	make friends, talk to, join in, go out, in conclusion
句子	1. There are lots of things you can do. 有许多事情你可以做。 2. You should also let your parents know that you want to make friends because they can help you. 你应该让你的父母知道你想交朋友，因为他们会帮助你。 3. You can try joining an art club or a sports club. 你可以试着参加艺术或体育俱乐部。 4. These are all great places to meet people. 这些都是能遇见人的很棒的地方。

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Dear Tony,

It's hard to make new friends. However, there are lots of things you can do.

First, you can play in your neighbourhood and try to find some kids. When you find some, you can go up and talk to them. You should also let your parents know that you want to make friends because they can help you.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Second, you can ask your parents to take you to the library or some public places where there are lots of kids. You can try joining an art club or a sports club. These are all great places to meet people.

Third, you can try making friends if you go out to take part in activities on Sundays. In conclusion, try to be active wherever you are, but just be yourself and don't try so hard.

It takes time and patience. I hope you will find a best friend soon!

Yours,
Mark

点评：本文运用"三要素法"写提建议类文章。
一、说明事实：It's hard to make new friends. 二、发表观点：However, there are lots of things you can do. 三、提出建议：First, ...Second, ...Third, ... 文中运用 First, Second, Third 等表示层次递进的关键词进行写作，层次分明，条理清晰，显示出较高的语言运用水平。整篇作文体例完整，夹叙夹议，逻辑严密。
添彩点：want to make friends, try to be active 等短语的运用使得表达灵活准确。if...；wherever...；It takes time and patience. 等句型的运用表现出作者较高的综合运用语言的能力。



V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见185页）

一、语法专练

1. —Do you know _____ the school library closes, Susan?
—Ten o'clock at night. [贵阳]
A. when B. why C. who

2. —I think the environment is terrible these years.
—Yes, it will be even worse _____ the government takes action _____ it. [龙东]
A. until; protect
B. unless; to protect
C. if; protecting

3. —There is always a smile on your face. Isn't there any trouble in your life?
—Yes, there is. But life is like a mirror. _____ you smile at it, it will smile back. [荆州]
A. When B. Before C. Until D. After

4. —Can students go online during lessons?
—They can _____ it is for that lesson. [江西]
A. if B. or C. so D. but

5. Many people like pandas _____ they are cute. [北京]
A. though B. if
C. while D. because

二、单元知识浓缩

根据短文及所给提示，在文中空白处填写一个正确的单词。

How do we get along _____[6] others in our life? We should have good _____[7] (communicate) with our friends. Sometimes,we may have _____[8] (misunderstanding), but if we communicate with our friends, we will have a good relationship. I had an e_____[9]. Lin Na and I were good friends. We _____[10] (use) to study and play together. One day, I found Lin Na copied my homework. I wanted to keep it a s_____[11], but I _____[12] (realize) it was wrong. So I told it to my teacher. We _____[13] (argue) with each other. She said we _____[14] (be not) friends any more. I knew I hurt her. I figured _____[15] what the problem was and explained it to her. Now, we are good friends again.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★Astronauts need to know a lot about science, Danny.

⑨ **a lot** 许多

e.g. He has a lot to do today. 今天他有很多事要做。

I feel a lot better than before.

我感觉比以前好多了。

There is a lot of juice left. 还剩下很多的果汁。

a lot 的用法：
①作名词性短语。
②a lot 还可作副词性短语，修饰形容词或副词的比较级。
③a lot of... 表示许多……，大量……，后接可数名词复数或不可数名词。
a lot of... = lots of...

考题在线 7 A dog will love you faithfully and bring you _____ happiness for years. [沈阳]

A. lots of　　B. many

C. a little　　D. a few

考题在线答案 1. D　2. His dream will come true.　3. B　4. A　5. C　6. choose　7. A

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

稳拿中考基础 20分　(答案见185页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成下列句子

1. Their _____ (老板) is very strict, so they are all afraid of him.
2. I _____ (怀疑) whether he has taken my pen.
3. Health is more important than _____ (财富).
4. The students are required to learn how to _____ (组织) the activities.
5. He _____ (经营) a small store.

二、单项选择

6. Everyone wants to win. But _____ me, the most important thing is to learn something new and have fun. [江西]

A. as for　　B. thanks to

C. instead of　　D. such as

7. We are supposed to _____ a solution to stop people from looking down at their mobile phones while driving cars. [昆明]

A. come up with　　B. come from

C. come out　　D. come true

8. There is no doubt _____ his English is very good. 【导学号：2994592】

A. what　B. if　C. that　D. whether

9. The 17-year-old high school student is trying to _____ a robot which can think like a human. [济南]

A. discover

B. organize

C. invent

D. achieve

10. It's a good idea to _____ new words in the dictionary. [吉林]

A. cut up

B. look up

C. put up

三、连词成句

11. me, couldn't, as, I, remember, for

_____.

12. go, he, to, chose, Beijing, to

_____.

13. next, his, out, week, novel, come, will

_____.

14. what, want, do, to, be, you

_____?

15. changed, I, if, he, has, his, doubt, mind

_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 56 Manage Your Time

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 · 导读　　导读批注

Pre-reading（读前）

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How much time do you spend ① on your homework every day?
  你每天花费多少时间做作业?
- Do you think you manage your time well?
  你认为你的时间管理得好吗?

课文朗读

批 体裁：
应用文

While-reading（读中）

- What's the problem of the Tired Girl?
  这位劳累的女孩儿的问题是什么?
- What advice does Sue give the Tired Girl?
  休给这位劳累的女孩儿什么建议?

批 文章结构：
并列结构

Dear Sue, 亲爱的苏:

I have so many things to do every day. Besides my ② schoolwork every weekday /'wi:kdeɪ/, I go to a chess club twice a week. I often have to help my younger cousin. She just started primary /'praɪməri/ school and has some difficulties in ③ maths. On top of ④ all that, I have classes in dance, piano, art... I like doing lots of different things, but I'm so busy! Yesterday, I fell asleep /ə'sli:p/ during class. I was so embarrassed!

我每天有如此多的事情要做。每个工作日除了学校的功课，我每周去两次国际象棋俱乐部。我还得经常帮助我的表妹。她刚上小学，在学数学上有些吃力。除此之外，我还有舞蹈课、钢琴课、美术课……我喜欢做不同的事情，但是我如此忙!

昨天，我上课时睡着了。我是如此尴尬!

批 考点：
找段落的主题句

批 词语赏析：
（加"~~"处）
几个词语的运用，向我们展示了一个忙碌女孩的身影。

What should I do? Can you help me?

我该怎么办? 你能帮助我吗?

A Tired Girl 一个劳累的女孩

Dear Tired Girl, 亲爱的劳累的女孩:

Sorry to hear about your trouble. You are such ⑤ a busy kid!

听到你的问题我很抱歉。你是一个如此忙的孩子!

I think you should take some time to think carefully about your plan. You can list all the things you need to do each week in a notebook /'nəʊtbʊk/. Can you do all of these things and get enough rest to stay healthy? If not,

批 词语赏析：
（加"~~"处）
情态动词的交替使用，恰当地给出了解决问题的方法。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

decide what things must be done and what can be dropped ⑥ from your list.

我想你应该花些时间认真想想你的计划。你可以把你每周需要做的所有事情在笔记本中列出清单。你能做所有这些事情并为了保持健康得到足够的休息吗？如果不能，决定哪些事情必须做，哪些可以从你的清单中去掉。

批 考点：（加"="处）找段落的主题句

Here are some other tips that may help you:

这里还有其他一些提示可能会帮到你：

- Plan your study time for each subject and do a review /rɪ'vjuː/ every weekend. 计划好你每科的学习时间，每个周末复习一遍。
- Organize your notes right after classes.
  课后立即整理好你的笔记。
- Take a few minutes every evening to check ⑦ how your plan is going. 每晚花费几分钟时间检查你的计划进展情况。

Making a good plan is half the work itself /ɪt'self/.

制订一个好的计划是工作本身的一半。

Best of luck! 祝你好运！

Sue 苏

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（见176页）

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and tick the suggestions mentioned by Sue. 读课文并勾出苏提到的建议。

□ Organize your notes right after classes. 课后立即整理好你的笔记。

□ Make a timetable of all your regular activities. 给你所有有规律的活动制作时间表。

□ Make a list of all the things you need to do each week.
把你每周需要做的所有事情列出清单。

□ Plan your study time for each subject. 计划你每科的学习时间。

□ Have a few minutes every evening to check how your plan is going.
每晚花费几分钟的时间检查你的计划的进展情况。

□ Record all the activities you decide to do on a regular basis.
定期记录你决定做的所有活动。

□ Do a weekly review of each subject. 每科做一个每周复习。

2 Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词填空。

itself 它自己	asleep 睡着的	review 复习	weekday 工作日	primary 小学的

1. When the class began, the teacher did a quick _____ of the last lesson. 当开始上课时，老师对上节课内容做了一个快速的 _____。
2. After a whole day's hard work, he fell _____ without eating supper.
一整天的辛苦工作之后，他没有吃晚饭就入 _____。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3. The dog found _____ lying in the field when it woke up.
当狗醒来时，它发现 _____ 躺在田地里。

4. Slow down! There are some _____ school students ahead.
慢一点！有一些 _____ 学生在前方。

5. This company holds a short meeting every _____ morning.
这家公司每 _____ 早上开个短会。

课文听力

3 Listen to the Tired Girl's timetable and fill in the table.

听劳累女孩的时间表并填表。

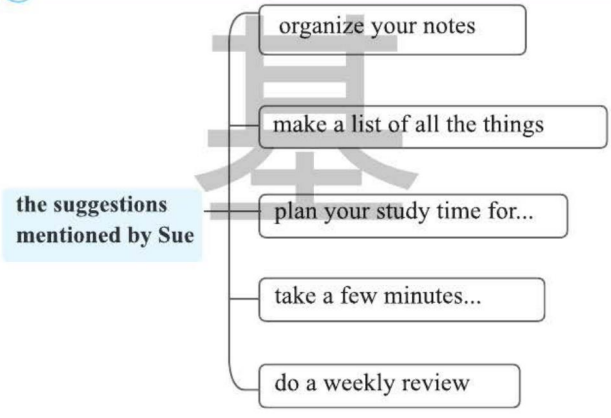
My Timetable 我的时间表							
	MON. 周一	TUES. 周二	WED. 周三	THUR. 周四	FRI. 周五	SAT. 周六	SUN. 周日
morning 上午	CT 上课时间	CT 上课时间	CT 上课时间	CT 上课时间	CT 上课时间	Dance 舞蹈	Review 复习
afternoon 下午		Science 科学			Play 玩		Dance 舞蹈
evening 晚上	Help my cousin 帮我表妹	Chess Club 国际象棋俱乐部	Review 复习	Help my cousin 帮我表妹	Chess Club 国际象棋俱乐部	Help my cousin 帮我表妹	

(CT: Class Time 上课时间)

4 Do you have problems managing your time? Think about all the things you do and make your own timetable.

你在管理你的时间上有问题吗？想一想你做的所有事情并制作自己的时间表。

课文背诵指南



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

（答案见186页）

阅读策略

综合归纳法（应用于阅读理解中的信息归纳题。做这类题时，我们需要通读全文，理清文章所列举的各种事例，推断作者意图，然后对所有的信息进行整合分析，综合所有内容，归纳大意，判断出正确答案。）

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读 Lesson 56，回答问题

1. ⊙ What's the matter with the Tired Girl?

（细节理解题）

_____

_____

二、细读文章，完成下列任务

2. What does Sue advise the Tired Girl to do about her subjects? （细节理解题）

A. Spend more time on the subjects.

B. Discuss more with her classmates.

C. Plan her study time for each subject.

D. Give up taking after-school lessons.

3. What's the main idea of Sue's advice?

（主旨大意题）

A. Organize the notes after classes.

B. Take a few minutes to check the plan.

C. Making a good plan is half the work itself.

D. Don't make yourself so busy.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★How much time do you spend on your homework every day?

spend...on 意为"在……方面花（时间或金钱）"，该短语的主语为人，后跟名词。

spend...(in)doing sth. 意为"花费（时间或金钱）做某事"。

① **spend** /spend/ *v.* 花（时间或金钱）

e.g. I spent two hours on my homework.

我花了两个小时做作业。

Most of her life was spent in caring for others.

她大半辈子的时间都用来照顾别人了。

考题在线 1 I like the TV program *The Reader* best. I think we should spend as much time as we can _____ in our spare time. [眉山]

A. read　　B. to read

C. reading　　D. reads

点拨：考查固定短语。spend …(in) doing sth. 花费……做某事。

辨析：except, except for, besides 与 but

① besides"除……以外（还）"，包括所除事物在内。

② except"除了"，表示从整体中除去，不包括所除事物在内。

★Besides my schoolwork every weekday, I go to a chess club twice a week.

② **besides** /bɪ'saɪdz/ *prep.* 除……以外（还）

e.g. What other languages do you know besides English?

除了英语之外，你还懂什么语言？

All the essays are well written except Jim's.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

除了吉姆的，所有的文章写得都很好。

His essay is well written except for a few spelling mistakes.
除了几处拼写错误之外，他的文章写得很好。

③ except for“除了”，指与基本情况不同的例外。

They all got lost but me.
除了我，他们都迷路了。

④ but“除了”，常用在 no, none, all, nobody, everything, everyone 等后。

考题在线 2 I want to learn a second foreign language _____ English. [天水]

A. except　　B. beside

C. besides　　D. except for

点拨：考查介词辨析。句意：我想学除英语以外的第二外语。except 除了……之外；beside 在旁边；besides 除……之外（还）；except for 除了。根据句意可知，想学除英语外的第二门外语。

★She just started primary school and has some difficulties in maths.

③ **have difficulties in sth.** 在……方面有困难

have difficulty (in) doing sth. = have trouble (in) doing sth. 做某事有困难

e.g. She has difficulty in playing the piano.
她弹钢琴有困难。

考题在线 3 —Mr Ling, I have some difficulty _____ the article.
—Remember _____ it three or four times at least. [泰州]

A. to understand; reading

B. understanding; reading

C. understanding; to read

D. to understand; to read





点拨：固定结构法。句意：——凌先生，我很难理解这篇文章。——记住至少要读三到四遍。have difficulty (in) doing sth.“做某事有困难”；remember to do sth. 意为“记得去做某事”，事情还未做。

★On top of all that, I have classes in dance, piano, art…

④ **on top of** 除……之外

e.g. Books were piled on top of one another.
书一本一本地摞在一起。

On top of his poverty, he had heart disease.
除了贫穷之外，他还有心脏病。

The lift was so crowded that everybody was on top of each other.
电梯里挤得人挨着人。

● on top of 的用法：
①在……上面
②除……之外
③紧挨着

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 4 他不想去国外和儿子住，除此之外，他不懂英语。

He doesn't want to live with his son abroad. _____ _____ _____ _____, he doesn't understand English.

★You are such a busy kid!

⑤ **such** /sʌtʃ/ *adj.* 如此的，非常的，这样的

e.g. How did you make such a mistake?

你怎么会犯这样的错误？

such + a/an + adj. + n.（可数名词单数），such + adj. + n.（可数名词复数 / 不可数名词）

【难点】辨析：such 与 so

	用法
such	such 修饰名词或名词词组，既可接可数名词，也可以接不可数名词。
so	so 修饰形容词与副词。

so + adj. + a/an + n.（可数名词单数），so + adj./adv.

e.g. Do you like such weather?

你喜欢这样的天气吗？

It is so interesting a book.

它是一本如此有趣的书。

速记小筏：巧记 so 和 such 的用法歌诀

名前 such，形、副 so，多多少少也用 so。little 用法较特殊，"小"用 such，"少"用 so。

若名词前有 many, much, little, few 等表示数量多少的词修饰时，前面用 so，不用 such。

e.g. He has so many books.

他有如此多的书。

若 little 不表示数量，而表示"小的"时，其前则需用 such。

I don't believe such little animals can eat so many insects.

我不相信如此小的动物能吃如此多的昆虫。

考题在线 5 — I missed the film "The Wandering Earth".

—What a pity! It is _____ meaningful film that it is really worth seeing. [泰州]

A. such a　　B. so

C. such　　D. so a

点拨：固定结构"such+ 名词短语 +that…"；"so+ 形容词 / 副词 +that…"均表示"如此……以至于……"。句中 meaningful film 是名词短语，要用 such…that 固定结构。

★If not, decide what things must be done and what can be dropped from your list.

⑥ **drop** /drɒp/ *v.* 放弃，落下，下降；使掉下

drop 用作不及物动词 ①掉下，落下 ②减少，下降，下跌，减弱

(1) 作不及物动词　drop-dropped-dropped-dropping

e.g. The apple dropped from the tree to the ground.

苹果从树上掉到地上。

The wind has dropped. 风势已减弱了。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(2) 作及物动词

e.g. Mary dropped the vase on the floor. 玛丽失手把花瓶掉在地板上。

You must drop smoking.
你必须戒烟。

Drop me at the corner.
让我在拐角处下车。

drop 用作及物动词
①使掉下，使落下
②放弃
③中途卸客

注意： drop in（顺便拜访）是不及物动词短语，其后不能接宾语。

e.g. She dropped in at his office.
她顺便去了他的办公室。

I thought I'd drop in on you while I was passing.
我曾想路过时顺便来看看你。



像公主般的宠爱自己
像汉子般的努力工作

考题在线 6 He was at the top in every competition. But things changed after he went to the new school. His grades started d_____.
[咸宁]

点拨：语境提示法。根据前一句“things changed after he went to the new school”可知他成绩开始下降了。start doing... 意为“开始发生某事”。

★Take a few minutes every evening to check how your plan is going.

⑦ **check** /tʃek/ *v.* 检查，检验，核实

check 可作及物动词，也可作不及物动词。

e.g. Listen again and check your answers.
再听一遍并检查你的答案。

与 check 相关的短语：

check-checked-checked

- check
  - check in（在旅馆、机场等）登记，报到。
  - check off（经核对后）在……上打钩。
  - check out 结账离开（旅馆等）。
  - check over 仔细检查，核查。

Regardless of success or failure, since I embark on a long road, I desperately press ahead.
不去想是否能够成功，既然选择了远方，便只顾风雨兼程。

e.g. Please check in at least an hour before departure.
请至少在飞机起飞前一个小时办理登机手续。

They packed and checked out of the hotel.
他们收拾好东西，办理了退房手续。

考题在线 7 It is quite necessary to c_____ the paper before you hand it in.
[湖州改编]

考题在线答案 1. C 2. C 3. C 4. On top of it 5. A 6. dropping 7. check

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 夺稳拿中考基础 20 分

(答案见186页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成单词

1. He c_____ our tickets carefully and let us in.

2. Here's a n_____ for you to take notes in class.

3. They have seven subjects on w_____ .

4. I didn't s_____ well. I woke up several times during the night. [济宁]

5. Many children enjoyed t_____ in the park yesterday. [新疆]

二、单项选择

6. Roy works in London. It _____ him about half an hour to get to work by bus every day. [临沂]

A. costs B. spends C. takes

7. —Alice, would you like to go hiking with us?
—What a pity! I am free every day _____ today. [兰州]

A. for B. except
C. besides D. among

8. _____ everything else, my car's been stolen.

A. Depend on B. On behalf of
C. On top of D. Ahead of

9. I can't believe _____ a little girl can write _____ many books.

A. so; so B. such; such
C. so; such D. such; so

10. —Mr Li, I can't understand everything in class.
—Don't worry! I'll _____ the main points in the end. [扬州改编]

A. record B. review
C. require D. remember

三、根据汉语完成下列句子

11. 昨晚虽然他很困，但是因为外面的嘈杂声，他发现入睡很难。 [安顺改编]

He was very _____, but he found it difficult to fall _____ because of the loud noise outside last night.

12. 在飞机起飞前1小时你必须到机场检票。

You must _____ _____ at the airport an hour before your plane leaves.

13. 每当我叔叔来我们的城市时，他都会顺便来看我们。 [呼和浩特改编]

My uncle always _____ _____ on us when he came to our city.

14. 他是第一个站在山顶的人。

He is the first man to stand _____ _____ _____ _____ the mountain.

15. 他不喜欢英语，因为他在学英语方面有一些困难。

He doesn't like English because he has some difficulty _____ it.

Bitter pills may have blessed effects.
良药苦口利于病。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 57 Best Wishes

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What will you miss most about junior high school? 关于初中你最怀念的是什么
- What would you like to say to your best friend when you graduate①?
  在你毕业时你想对你最好的朋友说什么?

We've shared so much together over our junior high years. I remember the day when Brian and I found a wallet /ˈwɒlɪt/ in the park. We waited there for hours to get it back to its owner /ˈəʊnə/. I also remember the day we rowed /rəʊd/ boats in the rain. I'll never forget② Danny's Desk-Cycle. Did you really think it would work, Danny? Good luck with your inventions in the future!

在我们的初中岁月我们一起分享了如此多的东西。我记得有一天我和布赖恩在公园发现一个钱包。我们在那里等了数小时使其物归原主。我还记得我们在雨中划船的时光。我将永远不会忘记丹尼的自行车桌。丹尼，你认为它真的可行吗？希望你未来的发明能够好运！

—Steven

——斯蒂芬

We laugh, we cry, and sometimes we fight. Whatever we do in the future, we will always have great memories of our time together. I'll miss all of you. Be sure to always stay in touch③!

我们欢笑，我们哭泣，有时我们打架。无论我们未来做什么，我们都会一直记得我们在一起的美好时光。我会想念你们所有人。一定要一直保持联系！

—Jenny

——詹妮

It's time to move on to the next level. I'll never forget the time Danny tried to move to the next level...by standing④ on a chair in the classroom. It won't be easy to forget all my friends in Canada. Though we are going to part, our friendship will always remain.

是时候向下一个阶段前进了。我永远不会忘记丹尼努力往下一个阶段前进的时刻……通过站在教室的椅子上。忘记加拿大所有的朋友不会容易。尽管我们即将分离，我们的友谊将会长存。

—Brian

——布赖恩

I can't believe⑤ that we've almost⑥ finished junior high. How time flies! I'm going to senior /ˈsiːniə/ high now, and I wonder⑦ what crazy experiments we'll do there. Will I have to wear my raincoat in science class again? Best of luck, everyone!

我无法相信我们差不多已经完成初中的学业。时间过得真快！我现在将去上高中，我想知道我们会在那里做什么疯狂的实验。我还会需要在科学课上穿雨衣吗？祝每个人好运！

—Danny

——丹尼

Going to senior high school is a new start. I'm confident⑧ that we'll all do very well. I wish you the best in everything you do.Follow your dreams, my friends! 去上高中是一个新的开始。我坚信我们都会做得很好。我希望你们事事顺利。我的

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

朋友们，追寻你们的梦想！

—Kim——金

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 **Everyone has a lot to say at graduation.Read the lesson and match the names with the sentences.**

毕业时每个人都有许多话要说。读课文并将人名与句子连线。

Steven 斯蒂芬	I wish you the best in everything you do.我希望你们事事顺利。
Jenny 詹妮	Best of luck, everyone! 祝每个人好运！
Brian 布赖恩	Though we are going to part, our friendship will always remain. 尽管我们即将分离，我们的友谊将会长存。
Danny 丹尼	Be sure to always stay in touch! 一定要一直保持联系！
Kim 金	Good luck with your inventions in the future! 希望你未来的发明能够好运！

课文听力

2 **Listen to more graduation messages and fill in the blanks.** 听更多的毕业信息并填空。

How time flies! We enjoyed so much together. Remember the sports meet? We worked hard together, and we won many prizes.

_____!

时间过得真快！我们在一起的日子如此开心。记得运动会吗？我们一起努力并获得许多奖牌。

_____!

—Mike ——迈克

We are going to graduate. We've been best friends, and I'll never forget your smile.It was the key to opening my heart when I was a newcomer._____!

我们即将毕业。我们已是最好的朋友，并且我永远不会忘记你的笑容。当我还是新来者的时候，它是打开我心门的钥匙。

_____!

—Kim ——金

I hope we both meet some very nice people and make many good friends._____!

我希望我们俩都能遇见一些很好的人并交很多好朋友。_____!

—Paul ——保罗

Though we are going to part, our friendship will always remain.Please let's not forget each other._!

尽管我们即将分离，我们的友谊将会长存。请不要忘记彼此。_____!

—Lucas ——卢卡斯

3 **What would you like to say to your classmates? Write it down.**

你想对你的同班同学说什么？把它写下来。

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

What would you like to say to your best friend when you graduate?

graduate from 毕业于……学校
graduate in 毕业于……专业

① **graduate** /'grædʒʊeɪt/ *v.* 毕业

e.g. He graduated from an American college.
他毕业于美国一所大学。
After graduating from high school, he worked in his father's company.
中学毕业后他在他父亲的公司里工作。
He graduated in physics. 他毕业于物理专业。
He is a graduate of Peking University. 他是北大的毕业生。
He hopes to get a good job after graduation.
他希望毕业后能得到一份好工作。

graduate *n.* 毕业生
graduation 为名词，意为"毕业，毕业典礼"。

考题在线 1 时间过得真快！几天后我们将从中学毕业了。 [自贡]
How time flies! We'll _____ from middle school a few days _____.

I'll never forget Danny's Desk-Cycle.

forget—forget—forgotten

② 【高频】**forget** /fə'get/ *v.* 忘记

敲黑板 高频考点要记牢，to do 没做；doing 已做。

forget 的用法：
① forget to do sth. 忘记去做某事（没做）
② forget doing sth. 忘记做过某事（做了）

e.g. Don't forget to turn off the lights when you leave.
当你离开的时候不要忘了关掉灯。
He forgot to tell her about it. 他忘记告诉她这件事了。
He forgot telling her about it. 他不记得已告诉过她这件事了。

辨析：forget 与 leave

e.g. Last time, you left the umbrella here. Today you'd better not forget it.
上次你把雨伞落在这儿了，今天你最好别忘了带走。

① leave 意为"把某物忘在某地"。
② forget 意为"忘记某事"。

考题在线 2 —The TV in your room is still on.
—Oh, I forgot _____. [青海]
A. turning it on B. turning it off C. to turn it off

速记小筏：forget 真特殊，一接地状变 leave。

点拨：考查非谓语动词。题干意为：——你房间的电视仍然开着。——哦，我忘记 _____。题干提示 be on"开着"，说明"关电视"这个动作并未进行。forget to do sth. "忘记做某事（动作还未进行）"；forget doing sth. "忘记做过某事（动作已经执行）"。

Be sure to always stay in touch! touch 相关短语：

keep/stay in touch (with sb.) （与某人）保持联系
be/get in touch (with sb.) （与某人）有/取得联系

③ **stay in touch** 保持联系

e.g. We must keep in touch with our parents. 我们必须跟父母保持联系。
I'll get in touch with you as soon as I get there. 我一到那里就跟你联系。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

lose touch (with sb.)
(与某人)失去联系
be/get out of touch (with sb.)
(与某人)脱离关系

It is wrong for him to get out of touch with people.
对他来说，脱离群众是不对的。

考题在线 3 露西与她的大部分同班同学仍保持着联系。

Lucy still _____ _____ _____ _____ most of her classmates.

★I'll never forget the time Danny tried to move to the next level... by standing on a chair in the classroom.

④ by doing sth. 通过……

by 的用法：
①表示方式、方法、手段等，意为"通过；靠；用"。
②与交通工具连用，意为"乘；坐"。
③表示位置，意为"在……旁边"。
④表示时间，意为"在……之前"。

e.g. I taught myself by listening to the radio and watching TV programs. 我通过听收音机和看电视节目自学。

Please tell me by telephone. 请打电话告诉我。

I go to school by bike. 我骑自行车去上学。 → by+可数名词单数形式

There is an old tree by the village. 村边有一棵古树。

I should be back by 5 o'clock. 五点前我应该回来。

考题在线 4 Some made use of their talents _____ singing and dancing in parks or shopping malls. [连云港]

A. by　　B. from

C. with　　D. about

点拨：成分分析法。由句意"有些人……在公园或购物中心唱歌、跳舞利用他们的才能。"可推知，要用介宾结构 by doing sth. 作方式状语。

★I can't believe that we've almost finished junior high.

⑤ believe /bɪ'li:v/ *v.* 相信

辨析：believe sb. 与 believe in sb.
believe sb. 相信某人，指相信某人所说的话是真的。
believe in sb. 信任某人

e.g. I believe what he says.
我相信他所说的。

He is a good leader that we can believe in.
他是一个我们可以信任的好领导。

一语辨异 I believe him, but I don't believe in him. 我相信他所说的话，但我不信任他。

I believe 后接表示否定意义的宾语从句时，需将否定前移。

有此用法的常见词还有 think, suppose, imagine, expect 等。

e.g. I don't believe that everyone believes in him.
我相信，并非每个人都信任他。

考题在线 5 I _____ (相信) that a better environment can be created in Binzhou and we should work together to make it come true. [滨州]

⑥ almost /'ɔ:lməʊst/ *adv.* 几乎

e.g. He almost fell off the bike. 他差点从自行车上掉下来。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

almost 和 nearly 这两个词都表示“几乎”，“差不多”的意思，在不少场合可以互换使用。

e.g. It is not nearly so cheap as you think.
它远非你想的那么便宜。
Almost no one takes a rest. 几乎没有人休息。
She hardly ever calls me. 她几乎从未给我来过电话。

辨析：almost，nearly 与 hardly
① almost 可以跟 no，nothing，never 这类否定词连用。
② nearly 不可跟否定词连用。但 not nearly 表示“远不如”的意思。
③ hardly 为否定词，意为“几乎不”，用在情态动词之后，行为动词之前。hardly ever 意为“几乎从不”。

考题在线 6 Ken was _____ late for school. The bell rang right after he entered the classroom. [河北]

A. still　　B. always
C. already　　D. almost

点拨：考查副词词义辨析。still 仍然；always 一直，总是；already 已经；almost 差不多，几乎。联系下一句“他一进教室铃就响了”可知，肯差一点就迟到了。

★…I wonder what crazy experiments we'll do there.

⑦ **wonder** /'wʌndə(r)/ *v.* 想知道；想弄明白

e.g. We all wondered what had happened. 我们都想知道发生了什么。
They all wondered at his rudeness. 他们都对他的粗鲁感到吃惊。
I wonder why he left. 我想知道他为什么离开。

一语辨异：How wonderful the Great Wall is! I wonder whether the Great Wall is the greatest ancient wonder in China.
长城太令人惊叹了！我想知道长城是否是中国最伟大的古代奇观。

wonder 的用法：
- wonder at 对……感到惊讶
- wonder about 想知道关于……
- wonder+if/whether/特殊疑问词引导的从句

wonder n. 奇迹
wonderful adj. 精彩的

考题在线 7 — I wonder _____.
—Someone who can make me a better person. [南京]

A. when you often meet your friends
B. how you make your friends happy
C. who you want to make friends with
D. where you spend weekends with friends

点拨：考查宾语从句辨析。句意：“我想知道你想和谁交朋友。”“能让我变得更好的人。”四个选项疑问词存在差异，结合答句句意可知应该询问想和谁交朋友。

★I'm confident that we'll all do very well.

⑧ **confident** /'kɒnfɪdənt/ *adj.* 自信的

e.g. I am confident in my English.
我对自己的英语水平有信心。
He is confident of getting the first place.
他对拿第一有信心 / 他确信拿第一。
I am confident about the future of our company.
我对我们公司的未来有信心。

常用短语：
- be confident in 对……有信心
- be confident of 对……有信心 / 确信……
- be confident about 对……有信心

confident 的名词为 confidence。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

I am confident that you'll succeed. 我肯定你会成功。

confident 后跟 that 从句表示"肯定……"。

考题在线 8 Which of the following can be used to describe the girl in the picture? [南京]



A. Crazy. B. Curious.

C. Scared. D. Confident.

考题在线答案 1. graduate;later 2. C 3. stays/keeps in touch with 4. A 5. believe 6. D 7. C 8. D

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见186页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. My sister entered a big company after _____ (graduate).
2. He has no _____ (confident) in himself.
3. I have forgotten _____ (finish) my homework. Oh, I have time to play.
4. —Mum, the summer holiday is coming. I wonder which place we _____ (visit).
   —How about Qinling Wild Zoo?[陕西改编]
5. Li Lin often practices English by _____ (chat) with her American friend.

二、单项选择

6. —We don't have enough money for our field trip. What shall we do?
   —The best way _____ money is to sell newspapers.
   A. raise B. to raise
   C. of raising D. both B and C
7. My friends are going to different schools, but I hope we will _____ with each other. [大连]
   A. go back B. grow up
   C. have a word D. stay in touch
8. Tourists can choose to visit Kunming _____ they like —spring, summer, autumn or winter. [昆明]
   A. whoever B. whatever
   C. whenever D. wherever
9. —Jack,remember _____ off the lights when _____ your bedroom.
   —OK, I won't forget, Mom. [达州]
   A. turning; leaving
   B. to turn; leave
   C. turning; left
   D. to turn; leaving
10. —I wonder _____ in Guangzhou in two hours.
    —Of course. The high-speed train is very fast. [黄冈]
    A. when I can arrive
    B. when can I arrive
    C. whether I can arrive
    D. whether can I arrive

三、连词成句

11. stay, sure, in, to, be, touch
    _____.
12. boys, friendship, the, had, long, a
    _____.
13. fly, could, bird, I, like, wish, I, a
    _____.
14. memories, will, of, I, our, together, time, have
    _____.
15. almost, has, no, snacks, she, sweet
    _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 58 Ms. Liu's Speech /spi:tʃ/①



I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How did you do in junior high school? 你在初中做得怎样?
- What is your most unforgettable memory from junior high school? 你初中最难忘的回忆是什么?



Good morning. I'm very happy to be here today. It is a great honour② to be invited to speak to you and to wish you well in the future. On my way to③ the hall just now, I stopped by some of your classrooms and read the notes you left for one another. Some of them made me laugh and some almost brought tears to my eyes. All of you have some great memories of this period /ˈpɪərɪəd/ of your life, and so do I!

早上好。今天我很高兴站在这儿。我非常荣幸受邀给你们演讲并给你们的未来祝福。刚才我在来大厅的路上，在你们的一些教室旁停留，读了你们给彼此的留言。它们中的一些使我笑了，还有一些几乎快让我哭了。你们所有人对你们这段时间的生活都有一些美好的回忆，我也是!

Time has gone by④ quickly. Three years have already passed. You had valuable /ˈvæljʊəbl/⑤ experiences in the past and you have bright futures ahead of you. I know all of you have your own⑥ dreams. Whatever you want to be, you need to work hard to achieve /əˈtʃi:v/⑦ it. And I do think you will.

时间过得真快。三年已经过去了。你们过去有宝贵的经历，前面有光明的未来。我知道你们所有人都有自己的梦想。无论你们想成为什么，你们需要努力学习才能实现。我确实相信你们会的。

Sometimes life is not easy. At times it can be very hard. No matter how high you rise, there will be times when you fall⑧ down. When this happens, remember this: there is no such thing as true failure. Failure is an opportunity to try something new. Pick yourself up⑨ and take a new road. Remember to be brave. Remember to be your best. And always remember that you have your family and friends to support you.

有时生活并不容易。有时它会很难。不管你们升得多高，总有掉下来的时候。当这发生时，记住这个：没有真正的失败。失败是尝试新事物的机会。振作起来并选择新的道路。记住要勇敢。记住要尽全力。还要一直记着你们有你们的家人和朋友的支持。

At last, on behalf /bɪˈhɑ:f/ of⑩ all the teachers, I'd like to give our best wishes and congratulations /kənˌgrætʃʊˈleɪʃənz/ to the graduating class!

最后，我代表所有的老师，想把我们最美好的祝愿和祝贺给毕业班!

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 读课文并判断正 (T) 误 (F)。

1. The students are having an English lesson.
学生们正在上英语课。 (　)

2. Some of the notes almost made Ms.Liu cry.
一些留言几乎快使刘老师哭了。 (　)

未德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Ms.Liu spent two years with this group of students.
刘老师和这群学生呆了两年的时间。 ( )
4. Ms.Liu thinks there is no such thing as true failure. 刘老师认为没有真正的失败这样的东西。 ( )

2 Read the lesson again and match each paragraph with its main idea.
再读一遍课文并将每段与其中心思想连线。

Paragraph 1 第一段	Ms.Liu hopes the students will be brave in the future. 刘老师希望学生在未来要勇敢。
Paragraph 2 第二段	Ms.Liu gives the students best wishes and congratulations. 刘老师给学生们最美好的祝愿和祝贺。
Paragraph 3 第三段	Ms.Liu shares some great memories with the students. 刘老师和学生们分享了一些美好的回忆。
Paragraph 4 第四段	Ms. Liu encourages the students to work hard to achieve their dreams. 刘老师鼓励学生们努力学习去实现他们的梦想。

3 The words in italics are from this lesson.Tick the correct answers to complete the sentences.
斜体词来自于本课。勾出正确答案来完成句子。

1. Our English teacher praises us for working hard for the first *period*, and she hopes we will do well next _____, too.
我们的英语老师表扬我们第一阶段的努力学习，她希望我们在下个_____也能做好。
□ day 天 □ term 学期

2. When running for president, the *speech* you give is a formal _____.
当竞选总统时，你发表的演讲是正式的_____。
□ talk 谈话 □ article 文章

3. When you *achieve* your dream, you _____ in doing what you want.
当你实现你的梦想时，你_____做成你想做的。
□ succeed 成功 □ failed 失败

4. He is so _____.He brought *honour* to his family. 他是如此_____。他给他的家庭带来了荣誉。
□ stupid 愚蠢的 □ brave 勇敢的

5. *Failures* can be quite _____ if you look at them in another way.
如果你用另一种方式看待失败，它们会是十分_____。
□ helpful 有帮助的 □ successful 成功的

4 Imagine you will represent all the students in your school. Write a speech for the graduating ceremony. 假设你将代表你学校的所有学生。为毕业典礼写一份演讲报告。
Task tips: Your speech can include your feelings, achievements, progress, mistakes you have made in the past three years, and thanks to all the teachers. 任务提示：你的演讲内容可以包括你在过去的三年里的感受、成就、进步以及你犯过的错误，以及对所有老师的感谢。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Ms. Liu's Speech

辨析：speech, lecture, report 与 talk
①speech 普通用词，指一般的发言或讲话，可以是事先准备的，也可以是即席的。指政治家等作的发言、演说。
②lecture 指教授等作的教育性或学术性的演讲。
③report 一般是指下级给上级或负责人给委托机关的书面或口头报告。
④talk 强调非正式的演讲、报告，讲话方式一般较为自由。

① **speech** /spi:tʃ/ *n.* 言语，讲话，演讲

e.g. We express our thoughts by speech.
我们用言语表达思想。

She will give a speech to the students this Sunday.
这个周日她将给学生们作演讲。

The president made a speech.
总统发表了演说。

He attended a lecture on American literature yesterday.
他昨天去听了一个关于美国文学的演讲。

This is a police report on the accident.
这是一份关于事故的警方报告。

She gave an interesting talk on her visit to China.
她做了个关于她在中国访问的有趣报告。

考题在线 1 —Do you like watching these TED _____ (演说) online?
—Yes, I've learned a lot from them. [连云港]

★It is a great honour to be invited to speak...

② **【难点】honour** /'ɒnə(r)/ *n.* 光荣，荣誉，荣幸 *v.* 尊重，给予表扬（头衔、称号等）

●作名词时，常用的词组为 in honour of..."为向……表示敬意"。
●作动词时，常用的短语为 be honoured with... "被授予……"。

e.g. There will be a party in honour of the hero.
为欢迎这位英雄将有个聚会。

He was honoured with a knighthood for his scientific work.
他因科研成就被授予爵士头衔。

考题在线 2 —Thousands of thanks for helping me find my lost baby!
—It's an h_____.

点拨：情景交际法。回答别人的感谢，通常用句型 It's an honour./It's my honour/ pleasure. 等。

★On my way to the hall just now, ...

③ **on one's way to** 在某人去……的路上

e.g. I saw him on my way to school.
我在上学的路上看见他了。

I agree with you in a way.
我在一定程度上同意你的看法。

●有关 way 的短语：
on the /one's way to 在去……的路上
lose one's way 迷路
in a way 在某种程度上

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

He is asking the question all the way.

他一直在问这个问题。

—Can I use your bike? 我能用一下你的自行车吗?

—No way. 没门儿。

He is getting in the way of me. 他在挡着我的路。

all the way 一直
no way 没门儿
get in the way (of) 挡路

考题在线 3 I enjoy talking with my classmates _____ our way to school. [重庆 B]

A. on　　B. at

C. in　　D. under

点拨：考查介词辨析。句意：我喜欢在上学的路上和同学们聊天。on one's way to sp. 是固定搭配。

★Time has gone by quickly.

④ **go by 流逝**

e.g. Years go by like running rivers. 似水流年。

Mr. Li went by us without saying a word.

李老师一言不发地从我们身旁经过。

She was in when I went by yesterday. 昨天我拜访时她在家。

go by 的用法：流逝 / 经过 / 顺便走访

★You had valuable experiences in the past and you have...

⑤ **valuable** /'væljʊəbl/ *adj.* worth a lot of money 宝贵的

e.g. This article provides valuable information for our research.

这篇文章为我们的研究提供了有价值的信息。

The land is quite valuable. 这块地很值钱。

His advice is of great value to me. 他的建议对我很有价值。

在句中可用作定语，也可用作表语，用作表语时，可与介词 to 或 for 连用，to 后接人，for 后接目的。

valuable 的名词形式是 value，意为"价值"。

常用短语：of great value 很有价值的

作定语　作表语

★I know all of you have your own dreams.

⑥ **own** /əʊn/ *adj.* 自己的

常用在形容词性物主代词后面。

e.g. We see it with our own eyes. 我们亲眼看见它。

We don't own our flat—we rent it.

我们的公寓不是自己的——它是我们租的。

Are you the owner of that car?

你是那辆轿车的车主吗?

Can you do the work on your own? 你能独自做这项工作吗?

I have no house of my own. 我没有自己的房子。

作形容词　作动词

own v. 拥有
owner n. 物主，所有权人

与 own 有关的短语：

on one's own 独自，在句中作状语。

of one's own 属于某人自己的。

★Whatever you want to be, you need to work hard to achieve it.

⑦ **achieve** /ə'tʃi:v/ *v.* to successfully complete something or get a good result 完成，实现，达到

e.g. After many years of hard work, Deng Yaping finally achieved success. 多年努力后，邓亚萍最终获得了成功。

If you work hard, you will achieve your dream.

辨析：achieve 与 come true

① achieve 及物动词，后加宾语。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

如果你努力工作，你就会实现你的梦想。

If you work hard, your dream will come true.

如果你努力工作，你的梦想就会实现。

② come true 不及物动词短语，后不加宾语。

I felt a great sense of achievement when I reached the top of the mountain.

achievement n. 成就，成绩；达到；完成

当我到达山顶时，我感到一种巨大的成就感。

考题在线 4 —I hear you're crazy about Roger Federer.

—Exactly! He is one of the greatest tennis players in the world and _____ 18 grand slams (大满贯) all together. [镇江]

A. achieves　　B. achieved

C. has achieved　　D. will achieve

点拨:考查时态辨析。句意：——我听说你对罗杰·费德勒很狂热。——确实！他是世界上最伟大的网球运动员之一，已经取得了共计 18 个大满贯。用现在完成时态强调他到现在为止取得的成就。

请开始你的表演



★No matter how high you rise, there will be times when you fall down.

⑧ **fall** /fɔ:l/ *v.* 落下

e.g. His plan has fallen down.

他的计划已经失败了。

He fell off his bike.

他从自行车上摔了下来。

Work hard, or you'll fall behind.

努力学习，否则你会落后。

●常见的短语：
fall down 跌倒，失败
fall off 从……摔下来
fall over 摔倒
fall behind 拖欠，落后

考题在线 5 After being so afraid of _____ (fall), it was a comfort not to fear it anymore. [义乌]

★Pick yourself up and take a new road.

⑨ **pick up** 捡起，拾起

敲黑板 pick up 一词多意，动副结构，代词放中间，名词放两边。

e.g. Your wallet fell onto the floor. Pick it up.

你的钱包掉在地上了，把它捡起来。

pick up 还有以下几种意思：

e.g. The train stopped several times to pick up passengers.

火车停了好几次，让乘客上车。　搭载，接人

He picked up the skills quickly.

他很快掌握了技术。　学到，获得

You should pick up the tools after work.

工作结束后你应该把工具收拾好。　收拾，整理

They picked themselves up and faced the difficulties bravely.

他们振作起来，勇敢地面对困难。　pick oneself up 振作精神

No road is too long to be measured by feet. No mountain is too high to be conquered by man.

没有比人更高的山，没有比脚更长的路

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 6 I asked my father to _____ me _____ at the school gate at 6:30 so that we could visit Grandma together. [河南]

A. pick; up　　B. turn; down

C. let; down　　D. cheer; up

点拨:考查动词短语辨析。pick … up 捡起，接载；turn … down 拒绝，关小；let … down 使……失望；cheer … up 使……振奋起来。联系下文的“以便我们能一起去看望奶奶”可知，此处指“我让爸爸 6 点半的时候在学校门口接我”。



★**At last, on behalf of all the teachers, I'd like to give our best wishes…**

一般后接名词或者名词性短语。

⑩ **on behalf of** 代表；为了……

e.g. On behalf of our company, I would like to welcome you here.

我代表我们公司欢迎你来这里。

They are fighting bravely on behalf of the peace-loving people.

他们正为那些热爱和平的人们而英勇斗争。

考题在线答案 1. speeches　2. honour　3. A　4. C　5. falling　6. A

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见186页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成下列单词

1. Lily's mom gave us a short s_____ yesterday.
2. I don't think they can finish the work in a p_____ of two days.
3. The watch is very v_____ because it is worth a lot of money.
4. No one can a_____ success without effort.
5. He attended the meeting on b_____ of the students.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. He is the _____ (own) of the house.
7. Bill prefers football because he thinks it's _____ (interesting) among all sports.
8. The _____ (achieve) of your dream depends largely upon your effort.
9. The house looked as if it was about to _____ (fall) down.
10. Though time has _____ (go) by, he can't forget these things.

三、单项选择

11. I'm writing this letter _____ my mother, who wants to thank you for your nice gift.

A. in order to　　B. in behalf of

C. on behalf of　　D. except for

12. As time _____, you'll come to think of English as your friend and love it. [安徽]

A. goes by　　B. runs out

C. takes off　　D. turns up

13. —Could you tell me the way _____ the railway station?

—Go along this road and soon you'll find it. [天津]

A. at　　B. to　　C. in　　D. between

14. She soon _____ the other students.

A. fell off　　B. fell over

C. fell behind　　D. fell on

15. Can you help me _____ the pen? It's under your chair. [河北]

A. ask for　　B. look for

C. pick up　　D. put up

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 59 Keep Your Choices Open

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you know any graduation songs? What are they? 你知道一些毕业歌曲吗？它们是什么？
- What things do you consider when you have to make an important decision?
  当你不得不做一个重要决定时，你考虑什么事情？

课文朗读

You want to keep ① your choices open. 你想扩大你的选择面。
Your education keeps your choices open. 你接受的教育将扩大你的选择面。
So when you grow up, you can be what you want. 因此长大后，你可以成为你想成为的人。
Do well in school, and the decision will be yours! ②
在学校好好学习，那么决定权就是你的！
You may decide to be a professor.
你可能决定要成为一名教授。
Your education keeps your choices open.
你接受的教育将扩大你的选择面。
Or maybe a merchant is the job for you.
或者也许你的工作是一位商人。
Do well in school, and the decision will be yours!
在学校好好学习，那么决定权就是你的！
You could be a successful farmer.
你可能会成为一个成功的农民。
Your education keeps your choices open.
你接受的教育将扩大你的选择面。
So when you graduate, you can be what you want. 因此毕业后，你可以成为你想成为的人。
Do well in school, and the decision ③ will be yours! 在学校好好学习，那么决定权就是你的！

Do you want to work for the government?
你想为政府工作吗？
Do you want to be a pilot?
你想成为一名飞行员吗？

Dig In 拓展

There are certain rules for job words. Look at these words:
职业名词有一定的规则。看这些词：

- farmer, teacher, singer, reporter, printer, waiter, photographer 农民、教师、歌手、记者、印刷商、服务员、摄影师
- professor, director, actor, tailor
  教授、导演、演员、裁缝
- musician, librarian
  音乐家、图书管理员
- artist, chemist, scientist, dentist, biologist
  画家、药剂师、科学家、牙医、生物学家

Can you guess the meaning of "lawyer", "inventor", "politician" and "specialist"? Can you find more words ending with "er", "or", "ian" or "ist"?
你能猜出"lawyer"，"inventor"，"politician"和"specialist"的意思吗？你能找出更多以-er，-or，-ian或-ist结尾的词吗？

Let's Do It! 做一做！

课文听力

1 Listen and tick the statements that are mentioned.
听并勾出提到的表述。

☐ Education keeps your choices open.
教育扩大了你的选择面。

☐ When you grow up, you can be a merchant.
当你长大后，你会成为一个商人。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

☐ Do well in school, and the decision will be yours.
在学校好好学习，那么决定权就是你的。

☐ Study hard, and you will do well.
努力学习，你就会做好。

☐ You may decide to be a professor.
你可能决定当一名教授。

☐ Maybe a police officer is the job for you.
也许你会当一名警察。

☐ You could be a successful cook.
你或许会成为一个成功的厨师。

☐ You could be a successful farmer.
你或许会成为一个成功的农民。

2 Read the song and tick the meaning that best describes each word.
读歌曲并勾出最能描述每个词的意思（的选项）。

1. professor 教授
   ☐ a title for a university teacher
   一位大学教师的职称
   ☐ a title for a high school teacher
   一位高中教师的职称
2. merchant 商人
   ☐ a person who works in a store
   在商店工作的人
   ☐ a business person in trade
   贸易中的生意人
3. farmer 农民
   ☐ one who works in a factory
   在工厂工作的人
   ☐ one who grows food and raises animals
   种粮食和饲养动物的人
4. pilot 飞行员
   ☐ a person who flies a plane
   开飞机的人
   ☐ a person who works in a spaceship
   在宇宙飞船里工作的人

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words or phrases in the box.
用方框中的单词或短语的正确形式填空。

successful 成功的　do well in 在……做得好 choice 选择　decide 决定　graduate 毕业

1. They have different dishes on the menu. There are so many _____.
   他们在菜单上有不同的菜肴。有这么多的_____。
2. If you want to _____ school, you must study hard.
   如果你想在学校_____，你必须努力学习。
3. She _____ from high school and went to university last year.
   去年她从高中_____后去上大学。
4. The most _____ people are those who fail the most, but try the most!
   最_____的人是那些失败最多，但尝试最多的人！
5. I know that you _____ to leave here, but please reconsider.
   我知道你_____离开这里，但是请重新考虑。

4 Work in groups. Do a survey and find out what your classmates want to do in the future. Make a list of possible professions and then interview your classmates.
小组活动。做一个调查并找出你的同班同学将来想做什么。制作一份可能的职业清单然后采访你的同学。

Task tips: 任务提示：
- What do you want to do/be in the future?
  你将来想做 / 成为什么？
- Why do you want to be a/an...?
  你为什么想成为一个……？

基德英语

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★You want to keep your choices open.

① **keep** /ki:p/ *v.* (使) 保持，处于

keep sth./sb.+介词短语/形容词/分词……使……保持……
keep/stop sb. from doing sth. 阻止某人做某事
keep (on) doing sth. 一直做某事

e.g. You should keep the room clean. 你应该保持房间清洁。

Keep your eyes open during the show. 节目期间不要闭眼。

The parents tried to keep the children from swimming in the sea. 父母们极力阻止孩子们在海里游泳。

A good book! Sophia kept reading for 3 hours. 好书！索菲亚一口气读了3个小时。

考题在线1 My little brother is a tidy boy. He always keeps his room _____. [长春]

A. clean B. to clean C. cleaning D. cleaned

点拨：语境提示法。句意：我的弟弟是个干净的孩子。他总是使他的房间保持清洁。keep...clean 表“使……保持清洁”，其中的 clean 是形容词，作宾语补足语。

★Do well in school, and the decision will be yours!

② 祈使句 + **and** + 陈述句 句法分析

其中祈使句表示“条件”，相当于 if 引导的条件句；and 后的陈述句表示结果，常用一般将来时。

e.g. Take more exercise and you'll feel better.=If you take more exercise, you'll feel better. 多锻炼，你将会感觉更好。

Hurry up, or you'll be late.=If you don't hurry up, you'll be late. 快点，否则你会迟到的。

“祈使句+or+陈述句”结构中的祈使句表示条件或假设，or 意为“不然的话，否则”。

考题在线2 _____ noise pollution, and we can live in a quiet environment. [眉山]

A. Prevent B. Preventing C. Prevented D. To prevent

点拨：考查祈使句用法。句意：阻止噪音污染，我们能生活在一个安静的环境中。祈使句以动词原形开头。

考题在线3 _____ your umbrella, or you'll catch a cold on such a rainy day. [攀枝花]

A. Take B. To take C. Taking D. Takes

③ **decision** /dɪ'sɪʒn/ *n.* 决定

decision 的动词形式为 decide 意为“决定”。常用的结构为：decide to do sth. 决定做某事。

e.g. I think you made a wrong decision. 我认为你作出了一个错误的决定。

He decided to go on Monday. 他决定星期一走。

考题在线4 At last, he decided _____ (test) his sons.

点拨：空白处前的动词 decided 后接不定式作其宾语。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. A 3. A 4. to test

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见187页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. They have decided _____ (not go) there by bus because there are few buses in the town.
2. You must keep your eyes _____ (close) when you do eye exercises.
3. Lily said that she had had a good _____ (educate).
4. Don't miss the early bus, or you _____ (be) late for school.
5. I kept _____ (read) for four hours yesterday afternoon.

二、用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空

decide, choose, success, educate, graduate

6. You can make a _____ among those programs.
7. You must make a _____ about what to do next.
8. No one can be _____ without hard work.
9. Some students go abroad to get further _____.
10. It was my first job after _____.

三、单项选择

11. You can't sneeze and keep your eyes _____ at the same time.

A. open B. opens
C. opened D. opening

12. Don't keep your friends _____ for so long.

A. waited B. to wait
C. to waiting D. waiting

13. After two hours' drive, the driver decided _____ and have a rest. [海南]

A. stop B. to stop C. stopping

14. It's going to rain. You'd better take an umbrella _____ you may get wet. [长沙]

A. or B. and
C. but D. so

15. Life is like a mirror. _____ you smile at it, it will smile back. [滨州]

A. Unless B. When
C. Until D. Though

Life road is full of beautiful sceneries, the most beautiful one of which is an enterprising person like you.
人生何处无风景，但最美的风景是进取的你。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 60 Get a Good Education

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Have you ever met any famous people? Who? 你曾见过著名的人物吗？谁？
- What do you think of being an astronaut? 你认为当一名宇航员怎么样？

课文朗读

Dear Diary, 亲爱的日记：

Guess what? I met a famous astronaut! I have always wanted to be an astronaut.Imagine how I felt when I saw Jack Hall in the mall. He was the first Canadian astronaut in space, and now, here he was in Edmonton!

你猜怎么着？我见到了一位著名的宇航员！我一直想成为一名宇航员。想象一下当我在购物广场见到杰克·霍尔时，我感觉如何。他是加拿大第一位进入太空中的宇航员，而现在他在埃德蒙顿！

At first ① I was nervous, but finally I decided to introduce ② myself. I said hello, and he immediately held out ③ his hand to me. When he shook my hand, I almost fainted! I told him that he was my hero and that I wanted to be an astronaut someday. He invited me to have a cup of tea with him. Can you believe it?

开始我很紧张，但是最后我决定介绍我自己。我（向他）打招呼，他立刻向我伸出他的手。当他与我握手时，我几乎昏倒！我告诉他他是我心中的英雄，而且我想将来有一天当一名宇航员。他邀请我和他喝茶。你相信吗？

We sat and talked for half an hour.I asked him how he became an astronaut.He said that he dreamed of visiting space when he was young. To get ready, ④ he studied hard in school. After he graduated from university, he became a pilot. Twelve years later, he got a job with the Canadian Space Agency. After so many years of hard work, his big chance arrived!

我们坐下来谈了半个小时。我问他是怎样成为宇航员的。他说当他小时候他梦想着参观太空。为做好准备，他在学校努力学习。他大学毕业后，成为一名飞行员。12 年后，他在加拿大国家航天局获得一份工作。经过多年的努力工作，他的大好机会来了！

I asked him for advice ⑤ on how to become an astronaut. "Well, "he replied, "It's not easy. You have to get a good education and keep your eye on your goal." Now I see how important it is to do well in school. Sometimes I don't work hard, but in the future, I definitely will!

我向他询问如何成为宇航员的建议。他回答："噢，这并不容易。你得接受良好的教育并关注你的目标。"现在我知道在学校好好学习是多么重要了。有时我不努力学习，但是在将来，我一定会的！

Let's Do It!

做一做！

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F).

读课文并判断正（T）误（F）。

1. Danny met Jack Hall in a restaurant.
   丹尼在饭店里见到了杰克·霍尔。 (　　)
2. Danny and Jack Hall had some coffee together.
   丹尼和杰克·霍尔一起喝了些咖啡。 (　　)
3. Jack Hall dreamed of visiting space when he was young.
   杰克·霍尔年轻时梦想着参观太空。 (　　)

禁复制

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. Jack Hall got a job with the Canadian Space Agency. 杰克·霍尔在加拿大国家航天局获得一份工作。 ( )

5. Jack Hall thinks it is easy to become an astronaut. 杰克·霍尔认为成为一名宇航员很容易。 ( )

2 This is Danny's interview with Jack Hall. Read the lesson again and answer the questions. Then role-play it.

这是丹尼和杰克·霍尔面谈的记录。再读一遍课文并回答问题。然后分角色表演。

Danny: Why did you want to be an astronaut?
你为什么想当宇航员?

Jack Hall: _____

Danny: What did you do to get ready?
你做了什么准备?

Jack Hall: _____

Danny: What job did you get after you graduated from university?
你大学毕业后获得什么工作?

Jack Hall: _____

Danny: How did you get a chance to go into space?
你如何获得机会进入太空的?

Jack Hall: _____

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the phrases in the box.

用方框中短语的正确形式填空。

at first 起初	have to 不得不	dream of 梦想
hold out 伸出	graduate from 从……毕业	

1. What do you want to be when you _____ university? 当你大学_____，你想成为什么?
2. _____, he didn't agree with me, but later he accepted my idea. _____，他不同意我的意见，但是后来他接受了我的意见。
3. My grandpa _____ becoming a professor when he was a child.
我爷爷小时候 _____ 成为一名教授。
4. I _____ go to work now.I must prepare for my next speech. 现在我_____去工作。我必须为我的下一个演讲做准备。
5. He said hello to the visitor and _____ his hand. 他向参观者打招呼并_____他的手。

4 Work in pairs.What do you think we need to do to make our dreams come true? Write your ideas down and share them with your classmates.

结对练习。你认为使我们的梦想实现我们需要做什么? 写下你的想法并和你的同学分享它们。

_____

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★At first I was nervous, but finally I decided to introduce myself.

① 【高频】at first 起初，开始时

e.g. At first, Jack couldn't believe his eyes.
一开始，杰克简直不敢相信自己的眼睛。

Mike and his sister didn't trust me at first.
迈克和他姐姐开始并不信任我。

First, let's ask him about his past.
首先，我们问问他的过去。

But above all, the travelers needed some tents.
可首先这些旅行者需要一些帐篷。

辨析：at first, first 与 above all
① first=first of all "首先；第一"，在句中作状语，强调首要的事情是什么。
② above all "首先"，侧重于事情的重要性。

at first=in the beginning "起初，开始时"，用来暗示后面情况有所变化。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 _____, the Internet was only used by the government. But now it's widely used in every field. [德州]

A. As usual B. At first C. After all D. So far

点拨：考查短语辨析。根据句意“互联网刚开始时只被政府使用。但现在却被广泛应用于每个领域。”可知答案。

② **introduce** /ˌɪntrəˈdjuːs/ *v.* 介绍；引见

introduce 是及物动词，后接名词或代词作宾语，表示自我介绍时，后接反身代词。

e.g. Please allow me to introduce myself. 请允许我介绍我自己。

Rose, let me introduce my friend to you.

罗斯，让我向你介绍一下我的朋友。

introduce 的宾语后接介词 to 时，表示“向……介绍……，把……介绍给……”。

★**I said hello, and he immediately held out his hand to me.**

③ **hold out** 伸出

e.g. He held out his hand to steady her. 他伸出手扶住她。

Hold on to the rope, or you will fall down.

抓紧绳子，否则你会掉下去的。

—May I speak to Jenny, please? 请找詹妮接电话好吗？

—Hold on, please. 请稍等。

Please hold your hand up. 请举起手。

和 hold 有关的短语

- hold out 伸出
- hold on 抓紧；坚持住；别挂断
- hold up 举起、拾起

考题在线 2 —May I speak to Mr. Smith?

—_____, please. I'll see if he is in. [安徽]

A. Look out B. Hold on C. Keep up D. Come on

点拨：情景交际法。由句意“请找史密斯先生接电话好吗？”“请稍等，我看看他在没在。”可知答案。



★**To get ready, he studied hard in school.**

④ **to get ready** 为做好准备

动词不定式短语作目的状语。

e.g. To learn English well, I'm used to keeping a diary every day.

为了学好英语，我习惯了每天写日记。

考题在线 3 We set up this group_____disabled people like Ben Smith. [齐齐哈尔]

A. help B. to help C. helping

点拨：考查非谓语动词的用法。句意：我们建立这个团体是为了帮助像 Ben Smith 一样的残疾人。此处用动词不定式表目的。

★**I asked him for advice on how to become an astronaut.**

⑤ **advice** /ədˈvaɪs/ *n.* 忠告，劝告，建议 不可数名词

辨析：advice 与 suggestion；advise 与 suggest

e.g. You should follow his advice. 你应该听从他的建议。

① 一条建议：a piece of advice

Please give us some advice. ② suggestion 可数名词。一些建议：some suggestions

请给我们些建议。

③ advise 及物动词，建议某人做某事：advise sb. to do sth.

Thanks to your suggestions, we were able to find the best way.

多亏了你的那些建议，我们得以能够找到最佳方法。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

④ suggest 及物动词，建议某人做某事：
suggest one's doing sth./suggest that one(should) do sth.

考题在线 4 About how to achieve a balance between hobbies and schoolwork, Justin asked me for my_____. [泰州]

A. position B. attention C. suggestion D. introduction

点拨：句意：关于如何取得爱好与学业之间的平衡，贾斯汀向我征求建议。表示“建议”，应用 suggestion。

How did you get a chance to go into space?

⑥ **get a chance to do… 得到一个做……的机会**

与 chance 有关的短语：
get a chance 得到一个机会
take a chance(on sth.) 冒险
by chance 意外地

e.g. We got a chance to visit Beijing. 我们得到一个游览北京的机会。

We will take a chance on the weather and go for a picnic. 我们将怀着天气可能会好的侥幸心理去野餐。

I met Tom by chance yesterday. 昨天我偶然遇见了汤姆。

考题在线 5 Teenagers should have more _____(机会) to make their own decisions. [青岛]

考题在线答案 1. B 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. chances

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见187页)

一、根据汉语提示填空

1. We think his suggestion is _____(有价值的) to us. [天水]
2. Please give us some _____(建议)on how to do it.
3. They all _____ _____(伸出) their hands to welcome me.
4. Nie Haisheng and Wang Yaping are great national _____(宇航员) of China.
5. He was wearing a pair of sunglasses and I didn't recognize him _____ _____(起初).

二、单项选择

6. We will go to London one month _____.
   A. in B. before C. ago D. later
7. I can imagine _____ the job.
   A. get B. to get C. getting D. got
8. Our teacher often advises us _____ the habit of making notes while reading. [苏州]
   A. to develop B. develop
   C. to developing D. developing
9. —You should do what you can _____ your English, Li Ming.
   —OK, I will. Thank you, Ms. Hu.
   A. improve B. to improve
   C. improving D. improved
10. The boy went to the hospital _____ after his mother. [青海]
    A. looked B. look C. to look

三、根据汉语完成下列句子

11. 我建议他使用前先检查一下机器。
    I _____ him _____ _____ the machine before using it.
12. 开始时我们并不喜欢她。
    _____ _____, we didn't like her.
13. 我在街上偶然遇到了失去联系很久的老朋友。
    I met an old friend _____ _____ in the street, who I had been out of touch with for a long time.
14. 他伸出双臂拥抱他的儿子。
    He _____ _____ his arms to embrace his son.
15. 经过这么多年的努力工作，他终于成功了。
    He succeeded at last _____ _____ _____ _____ of hard work.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary 词汇构建

Ⅰ. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the given words.
用所给词的正确形式完成句子。

1. Both Li Kai and Zhang Li were the _____ (boss) of the company at that time.
李凯和张丽那时都是公司的_____(老板)。
2. The dog hurt _____ (it) when it ran out of the door. 当狗跑出门的时候，它弄伤了_____(它)。
3. The first thing in _____ (achieve) your goal is getting started._____(实现)你的目标的首要任务是开始。
4. He is very busy. We _____ (doubt) that he will come to the party. 他非常忙。我们_____(怀疑)他会来参加聚会。
5. I think his suggestion is quite _____ (value). 我认为他的建议很_____(价值)。
6. Who is giving a _____ (speak) over there. 谁在那里发表_____(演讲)?

Ⅱ. Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the phrases in the box.
用方框中短语的正确形式填空。

fall asleep 睡着　pick oneself up 振作精神
bring tears to one's eyes 使某人哭
on top of that 除那之外
keep one's eye on 留意　on behalf of 代表

1. _____ my group members, thank you very much for all the support. _____我组成员，非常感谢你们所有的支持。
2. If you can _____ after you fail, and learn from the experience, you'll be a better person. 如果你能在失败之后_____，并从该经历中学习，你会成为一个更棒的人。
3. That movie was really touching. It _____. 那部电影真的很感人。它_____。
4. _____ the goal and work hard! Your dream will come true.
_____目标并努力工作！你的梦想将会实现。
5. The baby turned over in bed and _____ again. 婴儿在床上翻了个身又_____。
6. He lost his job. _____, his leg was hurt in an accident. 他失业了。_____，他的腿在一场事故中受伤了。

Grammar in Use 语法应用

This is part of a speech by a student for graduation day. Complete it with the correct forms of the given words. 这是一个学生在毕业典礼日演讲的一部分。用所给词的正确形式完成它。

Standing here today, I _____ (fill) with memories of my first school tour.It feels like we just _____ (arrive) here yesterday, and now it's time to leave.

今天我站在这儿，我_____(充满)我的第一次学校之旅的回忆。就像我们昨天刚_____(到达)这儿，而现在是离开的时候了。

I remember just after we _____ (begin) high school here three years ago, I came to love our school. It _____ (is) my home for the past few years. I _____ (make) friends here who have brought laughter and joy into my life. I have progressed so much. Here I _____ (realize) that there are no limits to learning.

我记得三年之前我们在这里刚_____(开始)中学(生活)后，我便爱上了我们的学校。在

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

过去的几年里，它_____(是)我的家。在这里我_____(交)朋友，他们给我的生活带来笑声和快乐。我取得很大的进步。在这儿我_____(意识到)学无止境。

Listening and Speaking

听力与口语



Ⅰ. Listen to the passage and tick the correct answers. 听文章并勾出正确的答案。

1. What does Bob's mother do?

鲍勃的妈妈是做什么的?

☐ She is a musician. 她是一位音乐家。

☐ She is an astronaut. 她是一名宇航员。

☐ She is a cook. 她是一名厨师。

2. What does Bob look forward to?

鲍勃期待什么?

☐ Becoming a pilot. 成为一名飞行员。

☐ Studying music. 学习音乐。

☐ Flying into space. 飞入太空。

3. Why don't Bob's parents agree with him?

为什么鲍勃的父母不同意他的观点?

☐ Because they think Bob won't be happy. 因为他们认为鲍勃不会开心。

☐ Because they think the job is dangerous. 因为他们认为这个工作是危险的。

☐ Because they think Bob isn't clever enough. 因为他们认为鲍勃不够聪明。

4. Where is Bob studying now?

鲍勃现在在哪儿学习?

☐ At a music school. 在一所音乐学校。

☐ At a space school. 在一个航天学校。

☐ At a middle school. 在一所中学。

5. How much does Bob like music? 鲍勃有多么喜欢音乐?

☐ Very much. 非常。 ☐ Just so-so. 一般般。

☐ Not at all. 根本不。

Ⅱ. Work in groups. Discuss what Bob should do and give him some advice. 小组活动。谈论鲍勃应该做什么并给他一些建议。

Putting It All Together 综合运用

Read the passage and follow the instructions. 读短文并按指导行事。

When You Grow Up 当你长大后

All children will grow up one day. That is the way it has always been. You, too, are growing up. Even as you attend your daily classes, you are growing up. _____ But you must not forget that you have responsibilities. 总有一天所有的孩子都会长大。那是自然规律。你也一样，正在长大。就在你每天上课的时候，你正在长大。_____但你千万不能忘记你有责任。

You might not know exactly what you want to be when you grow up. And that's OK. You should try to find out as much as you can about future job opportunities. _____你可能并不是很清楚长大后想成为什么。那倒无妨。你应该尽可能多地努力发现你将来的工作机会。_____

Do you know anyone who could give you some good advice? What about your teachers? How about your parents, your uncles or your aunts? If you'd like to become a doctor, why don't you meet with a doctor and discuss what it takes to become one?_____ It's good to be ready for the future. 你认识可以给你一些良好的建议的人吗? 你的老师怎么样? 你的父母、叔叔或阿姨怎么样? 如果你想成为一名医生，为什么不约见一位医生，讨论一下成为一名医生要具备些什么条件? _____ 为将来做好准备是有好处的。

1. Fill in the blanks with the sentences below. 用下面的句子填空。

A. Discover what you'd like to do when you grow up. 弄明白长大后你想做什么。

B. You should have fun as you are growing up. 当你成长时，你应该玩得开心。

C. You are only in junior high school, but the years go by quickly. 你只是在上初中，但是时光匆匆而过。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. Translate the following sentences into Chinese. 把下面的句子翻译成汉语。

a. Even as you attend your daily classes, you are growing up.

就在你每天上课的时候，你正在长大。

b. You might not know exactly what you want to be when you grow up.

你可能并不是很清楚你长大后想成为什么。

Self-Evaluation 自我测评

Find more examples from this unit.Then mark your stars.

从本单元中找出更多的例子。然后标记你的星星。

Ⅰ. **Talking about the Future** 谈论未来

I'm going to be an astronaut.

我要当一名宇航员。

I can talk about the future in English.

我能用英语谈论未来。

Ⅱ. Giving Wishes 表达祝愿

I'd like to give our best wishes and congratulations to the graduating class!

我想将我们最美好的祝愿和祝贺给毕业班！

I can give wishes in English.

我能用英语表达祝愿。

When I Grow Up 当我长大后

When I grow up, I'll be a fireman.

当我长大后，我要当一名消防员。

Saving people, that's what I'll do.

解救人们，那是我要做的。

Honk, honk, the fire engine's coming.

滴滴，滴滴，消防车来了。

What do you want to do? 你想做什么?

When I grow up, I'll be a doctor.

当我长大后，我要当一名医生。

I'll make people better, that's what I'll do.

我会治好病人，那是我要做的。

Ding, ding, the doctor is coming.

叮，叮，医生来了。

What do you want to do? 你想做什么?

When I grow up, I'll be a policeman.

当我长大后，我要当一名警察。

Keeping people safe, that's what I'll do.

保卫人们的安全，那是我要做的。

Honk, honk, the police car's coming.

滴滴，滴滴，警车来了。

What do you want to do? 你想做什么?

When I grow up, I'll be a soccer player.

当我长大后，我要当一名足球运动员。

Helping my team, that's what I'll do.

帮助我的球队，那是我要做的。

Yeah, yeah, the soccer player's coming.

耶，耶，足球运动员来了。

What do you want to do? 你想做什么?

What do you want to do? 你想做什么?

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

"主将从现"原则——主从复合句中一般将来时与一般现在时的搭配

考点1 主句为一般将来时，时间状语从句用一般现在时表示将来。

考向：引导时间状语从句的连词有：when/ before/ after/ as soon as/ once/ whenever/ until 等。

e.g. The doctors won't leave until the patients get out of danger.

医生们将不会离开，直到病人脱离危险。

The reporters will have an interview when the meeting is over. 散会后，记者将进行采访。

考题在线1 I'll go to visit my aunt in England _____ the summer holiday starts. [岳阳]

A. since　　B. until　　C. as soon as

点拨：句意：暑假一开始我就去英国拜访我阿姨。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

since 自从……以来；until 直到……为止；as soon as 一……就……。根据句意可知答案。

考点2 主句为一般将来时，条件状语从句用一般现在时表示将来。

考向一：引导条件状语从句的连词有：if/unless/as long as 等。

e.g. The sports meeting will be put off if it rains.

如果下雨，运动会将被推迟。

I'll come to the party unless I am not invited.

我会来参加聚会除非我没有收到邀请。

考向二：祈使句 + and/ or + 将来时的句子。其中祈使句表示条件，and/ or 后面的句子表示结果。

e.g. Think it over before your action, or you'll regret. 行动前要三思，否则你会后悔。

Come closer, and you will see them more clearly.

再往前点儿，你会更清楚地看到它们。

考点3 主句谓语含情态动词，状语从句用一般现在时表示将来。

e.g. You can be healthier if you exercise more.

如果多锻炼，你会更健康。

We should try our best to help the visitors if they need.

如果游客需要，我们就应该尽可能帮助他们。

考题在线 2 Bill, stop smoking, _____ you'll get better soon. [黔南]

A. but　　B. after

C. or　　D. and

点拨：考查连词辨析。句意：Bill，停止吸烟，这样你很快就会好起来。根据前后句意可知，停止吸烟和更快好起来有顺承关系。

考题在线 3 When you're tired, you can get close to nature _____ you'll feel relaxed in the beauty all around. [山西]

A. or　　B. and　　C. but

点拨：考查连词词义辨析。句意：当你累的时候，你可以接近大自然并且置身美景中感到放松。横线前面的"亲近大自然"和其后面的"置身美景中感到放松"之间是顺承关系。

速记小筏：条件状语从句"主将从现"和表事实时用现在时口诀：条件句不一般，几个要点记心间；条件句，放在前，逗号要放句中间。条件句表可能，主句多用将来时；条件句表事实，主句常用现在时。

it 作形式主语

考点1 动词不定式，动名词或主语从句作主语时，通常把它们放在谓语动词后，而用 it 作形式主语，放到句首。

考向一：it 作形式主语，后面的动词不定式短语作真正主语。

① It + be + 形容词 + (for sb.) + 动词不定式. 这类句型常用 fun, easy, difficult, hard, important, possible 等作表语，有时为了强调不定式动作的执行者，常在不定式前加 for sb。

e.g. It's necessary for the young to master two or more languages.

年轻人有必要掌握两种或者更多种语言。

It is fun to watch live football games.

看现场足球比赛很有意思。

② It + be + 形容词 + of sb. + 动词不定式. 这类形容词常是表示心理品质，性格特征的形容词，如：kind, nice, stupid, clever, foolish, polite, impolite, silly, selfish 等。sb. 和这些形容词可以构成主系表结构。

e.g. It's very kind of you to help me with the work. = You are very kind to help me with the work.

能帮我做这个工作你真好。

It seemed selfish of him not to share his dictionary with others. = He seemed selfish not to share his dictionary with others.

他不肯让别人用他的词典，似乎很自私。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

③ It + be +名词词组+动词不定式.

e.g. It is not a good habit to stay up too late.

熬夜很晚不是一个好习惯。

④ It + takes (sb.) +时间+动词不定式.

e.g. It took the workers almost three years to finish building the dam.

工人们用了几乎三年的时间才建成这座大坝。

考题在线 4 Maria 每天上学要花 15 分钟。

[内江]

考向二：it 作形式主语，后面的从句作真正主语。

① It + be +形容词+主语从句.

e.g. It is uncertain whether he can come to Jenny's birthday party or not.

他是否能来詹妮的生日聚会还不确定。

② It + be +名词词组+主语从句. 这类词有：a fact, a pity, a shame, an honour, a question 等。

e.g. It's a pity that you missed the exciting football match.

你错过了这场精彩的足球赛真可惜。

It remains a question whether he likes it or not. 至于他喜不喜欢还是个问题。

③ It + be +过去分词+主语从句. 这类过去分词有：announced, believed, expected, hoped, decided, reported, said, shown 等。

e.g. It is reported that 16 people were killed in the earthquake.

据报道，有 16 人在地震中丧生。

It is not decided who will perform the operation.

谁来做手术还没定下来。

④ It +不及物动词+主语从句. 这类不及物动词有：matter, happen 等。

e.g. It happened that she was out.

碰巧她不在家。

考题在线 5 _____ is quite easy for people to find any place in the world with the help of online maps. [乐山]

A. That B. It C. One

点拨：考查固定句型。It is +*adj.* +for sb. to do sth. 是英语中的固定句型，意为"对于某人来说做某事是……"。

考题在线 6 在做这项工作前，他们有必要接受培训。

[扬州]

考题在线答案 1. C 2. D 3. B 4. It takes Maria fifteen minutes to go to school every day. 5. B 6. It is necessary for them to receive training before doing the task.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见187页)

听力技巧

读听定位法(迅速预读题干及选项信息，预先了解听力材料内容纲要，预测出题方向，以便等录音内容开始播放时有目的地捕捉所需信息。)

听力过程

听本课 **Listening and Speaking** Ⅰ

完成以下习题

1. Bob _____ flying into space.

2. Bob's parents say it would be _____ for Bob to become an astronaut.

3. Bob's parents think it is quite _____ to be an astronaut.

4. Bob doesn't _____ hard work, but he is not interested in music at all.

5. Bob doesn't know how to make his dream _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

The passage tells us about (交代 what) a tired girl and Sue. The girl is so busy every day. She has many things to do. She doesn't know how to manage her time. So she asks Sue for help. Sue is glad to give her some advice. Sue tells her (交代 why) to take some time to think carefully about her plan and decide what things must be done. At the same time, Sue also offers some other tips. (交代 how)

单元话题

请以“My Dream”为题写一篇英语短文，供英语课上交流。 [杭州]

Dream	I want to...
Reasons	be interested in it...
Ways to achieve my dream	work hard at school, find out how successful people did it...

注意：1. 短文必须包括以上三部分内容，需陈述理由（2条）和方式（3条）；

2. 表中右栏信息仅供参考，也可自由发挥；

3. 词数：80左右。

My Dream

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

认真阅读写作内容要求，可获得以下写作信息：(1) 体裁：本文应为议论文。(2) 时态：用一般现在时和一般将来时。(3) 提示：写打算用一般将来时态。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“2W1H法”写职业规划类作文

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

“2W1H法”

1. **What:** I want to be a writer when I grow up.
2. **Why:** Through writing I will be able to share my ideas and...
3. **How:** I can achieve my dream by reading widely and by working hard at school to learn as much as possible.

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	want, share, others, achieve, learn, important, successful, determined
短语	grow up, be able to, make friends, as much as possible, find out
句子	1. I want to be... 2. I can achieve my dream by... 3. I'm determined to...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

My Dream

I want to be a writer when I grow up[①]. Writing has been part of my life[②]. Through writing I will be able to share my ideas and make friends with others[③].

I can achieve my dream by reading widely and by working hard at school to learn as much as possible[④]. It's also important to find out how successful people did it[⑤] so that I can learn from them. I'm determined to hold on to my dream till one day it comes true.

点评：本文运用“2W1H法”写作。What（理想中的职业是什么）：①开门见山，简洁明了，直入主题。Why（职业特点，喜欢该职业的原因）：②③围绕主题展开论述，说明该职业的重要性，条理清晰，表达准确。④⑤阐明实现梦想的途径，句型运用熟练，恰当。

测试卷及听力

禁德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见187页)

一、语法专练

1. —Do you know when he _____ here?
—No, but I will call you when he _____ here. [遂宁]

A. comes; will come
B. comes; comes
C. will come; comes

2. If a driver _____ to park in the wrong place, he'll get a fine. [漳州]

A. finds
B. is found
C. has found

3. We will achieve our China Dream _____ we work hard and never give up. [资阳]

A. and B. so
C. if D. but

4. —When will you return the book to me?
—I'll give it to you _____ I finish it.

A. before B. until
C. as soon as D. unless

5. It's very dangerous for us _____ the mobile phone while crossing the street. [益阳]

A. answering
B. to answer
C. answer

二、单元知识浓缩

根据短文及所给提示，在文中空白处填写一个正确的单词。

According to the British g_____[6], students as young as nine in primary school are able _____[7] receive advice on how _____[8] (choose) their future careers. They can receive the advice through the Internet. This program aims to encourage students _____[9] (consider) their future careers at a young age, and help them to make their dreams _____[10] (come) true. The students will be given advice on what they should do by teachers. They will also have the chance _____[11] (visit) universities and get s_____[12] on which subjects to study from those websites.

"A recent study shows that 75% of the 11-year-old students want to go to university after graduating _____[13] high school," the government said.

"It is often too late for children to start thinking about their future careers at the age of 14.Parents who want their children to be football players will tell them to start playing at an early age, but that's not only true for football. If parents want their children to be doctors or teachers, then they should _____[14] (make) sure that their children get to understand and learn about those careers as well," said Ed Balls.

The program will _____[15] (carry) out in 38 schools in major cities in Britain.

未德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

参考答案及点拨

Unit 7 Work for Peace

Lesson 37 Don't Fight!

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. service 2. secretary 3. message
4. separate 5. check

二、6. bring 点拨:Why not 后跟动词原形。
7. gentlemen 点拨:本题用逻辑分析法。由 Ladies 知 gentleman 应用复数形式。
8. beat; won
9. to go
10. has broken

三、11. B 点拨:本题用寻找题眼法。divide 和 into 连用,表示“把整体分成若干部分”;separate 和 from 连用,表示“把混在一起的东西分开”。故选 B。
12. D 点拨: have fun doing sth. 意为“做某事很开心”,故选 D。
13. D
14. D 点拨:运用正确把握语境法。考查非谓语动词。hear sb. doing sth. 听见某人正在做某事,hear sb. do sth. 听见某人做了某事。根据句意:——杰克在隔壁的房间吗?——嗯,很难说。但是刚才我经过时,听见他在大声说话。由语境可知,“我”听到杰克正在大声说话,故选 D。
15. B 点拨:考查 divide 和 separate; jump in 和 jump on 的辨析。divide 是把一个整体分成若干个部分,separate 是把混在一起的东西分开。jump in 打断谈话,参与,欣然加入,jump on 跳上。根据句意“这两个学生在打架。你应该赶紧把他们拉开。”可知选 B。

Lesson 38 Making School a Better Place

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. Student councils work to make schools better places to learn.

二、2. D 3. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. president 2. provide
3. agreement 4. Anyway
5. organization

二、6. provide; with
7. raising funds for
8. reach an agreement
9. In the end
10. make a difference

三、11. C 点拨: each 在句中作主语,谓语动词用单三形式;根据 last week 可知用一般过去时的被动语态。故选 C。
12. C 点拨:运用正确把握语境法。句意:他们都同意劳拉在此建博物馆的事。wait for 等待;hand in 上交;agree with 同意(某人的建议);knock at 敲(门)。结合句意可知选 C。
13. C 点拨:考查固定短语。make a difference to... 对……有影响。
14. C 点拨:考查动词词义辨析。take 带走;show 展示;provide 提供;carry 搬运。此处表示超市不提供免费的塑料袋。故选 C。
15. D 点拨:运用替代法。finally 最后、最终。at times 有时;at the moment 在此刻;at once 立刻,马上;in the end 最后,最终。故选 D。

Lesson 39 Having Good Relationships in Your Community

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. peacefully 2. saying
3. options 4. argument
5. politely

二、6. B 点拨:考查连词。句意:——玛丽亚,在中国学习三年之后,你有什么收获?——我不但学到了知识,而且学会了讲礼貌。not only…but also… 不但……而且……,故选 B。
7. C 点拨:考查短语辨析。句意:——我恐怕这

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

个男孩解决不了这个问题。——我也是这么认为的。_____，他才仅仅八岁。in general“总之”；so far“到目前为止”；after all“毕竟”；for example“例如”。根据题干意思可以判断“毕竟他才八岁”，故选C。

8. A

9. C

10. C 点拨：句意：他叔叔宁愿修理旧自行车也不愿意买一辆新的。would rather do sth. than do sth. 宁愿做某事而不愿做某事。

三、11. He lives in a distant village

12. The man is an excellent judge

13. She felt upset about the result

14. Can you get along well with them

15. I have good relationships with people

Ⅱ Lesson 40 The UN—The Power of Words

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. satisfied 点拨：句意：听说你对你的新车不满意我们很遗憾。be satisfied with… 是固定结构，意思是“对……满意”。故填satisfied。

2. lending

3. last

4.is chosen 5. twentieth

二、6. suffer from

7. instead of

8. however

9. be satisfied with

10. in a dangerous situation

三、11. A

12. C 点拨:instead of为介词短语，后接名词、代词、动名词或介词短语。

13. C

14. B 点拨：固定句型：It’s an honour for sb. to do sth. 意为“某人很荣幸做某事。”句中表示“被邀请”，所以要用不定式的被动形式。

15. D

Ⅱ Lesson 41 Jenny’s Good Advice

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. silence

2. to have 点拨：本题用正确把握语境法。由句意“我已经完成作业了，妈妈。我可以停下来休息一下吗？”可知，此处应用to have。

3. is

4. to get

5. waiting

二、6. D 点拨：句意：有两条路，任何一条路都通往车站。either作代词，作主语时，谓语动词用单数，且根据句意可知用一般现在时。故选D。

7. D 点拨：句意：——你在讲英语方面有困难吗？——是的。但是我尽力让自己被理解。have difficulty in doing sth. 在做某事方面有困难；try to do 尽力做某事；try doing 试着做某事。根据句意可知选D。

8. D 点拨：考查形容词辨析。calm“平静的”，指人的情绪；quiet“安静的，宁静的”，指无噪音、吵闹声或心境平静；still“静止的，不动的”，指没有运动的一种状态；silent“寂静的”，指无声或不讲话。根据句意“当我问她把字典放在了哪里时，她保持沉默。”可知应选D项。

9. A 点拨:after all毕竟，终归；after that在那之后；what’s more 而且；what’s worse 更糟糕的是。句意为：注意这个问题，毕竟它与我们的日常生活有关。结合句意可知选A。

10. C 点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：——为什么这名外科医生不停下来吃午饭？——因为他在手术室忙着挽救一位濒危病人。stop to do sth. 是“停下来去做某事”；“忙于做某事”用be busy doing… 表达。故选C。

三、11. We have agreed on the time

12. He sat here in silence for a long time

13. Neither of them wants to talk

14. They want to keep silent forever

15. Everyone else agreed on the new time

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 42 Peace at Last

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. are planting　2. looking

3. angrily

4. not work

5. go

二、6. B　点拨：句意：多亏政府的努力，我们的生活变得越来越好。instead of 而不是；thanks to 多亏；thanks for 为某事而感谢；in order to 为了。根据语境可知选 B。

7. C

8. B　点拨：句意：今天的作业如此难，以至于我仍然需要几分钟。a bit 稍微、有一点儿，修饰形容词、副词；a couple of 两个，几个，后面跟可数名词；few 很少，表示否定意思；a bit of 一点，后面跟不可数名词。minutes 是可数名词复数，应选 B。

9. C　点拨：prefer to do sth. rather than do sth. 愿意去做……而不愿去做……。句意：我愿意呆在家而不愿意去看电影，故选 C。

10. A　点拨：make sb. + *adj*. 意为“让某人……”，所以第一空用 angry；第二空修饰动词 asked，用副词 angrily。故选 A。

三、11. His father is on the *People's Daily* now

12. Are you angry with me

13. We were ready to beat each other

14. A good friendship makes life happier

15. We all want peace rather than fighting

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C　2. C　3. B

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. B　点拨：考查并列连词用法。so 因此，表因果；and 和，并且，表顺承，递进；or 或者，否则，表选择或条件；but 但是，表转折。理解前后句意：一个更好的未来就是中国人民的目标，这也是世界共同的利益。前后句意构成并列的递进关系，应用 and 连接。故选 B。

2. B　点拨：考查连词的用法。句意：我试着给你打电话，_____你的电话不在服务区。and 和；but 但是；so 所以；or 否则。根据句意可知，前后存在转折关系。故选 B。

3. C　点拨：考查连词辨析。句意：“穿上外套，否则你会感冒的！”这是我妈妈经常对我说的话。and 和，表并列关系；but 但是，表转折关系；or 否则，表条件关系；so 因此，表因果关系。故选 C。

4. B　点拨：句意：——爸爸，将来我想当一名警察。——努力学习，你就会成功的。or 或者，否则；and 和，并且；but 但是。由语境可知，本句中连词表示顺接关系，因此用 and。故选 B。

5. A　点拨：考查连词的用法辨析。句意：学会更多的阅读技能，_____你将会成为一个好的读者。and 意为“并且；那么”，前后分句是并列顺承关系；or 意为“或者；不然”，前后分句是选择或转折关系；but 意为“但是”。前后分句是转折关系。根据句意判断这里要用连词 and，表示顺承关系，故选 A。

二、6. with　7. couple　8. agreed　9. let

10. being repaired　11. service

12. threw　13. to

14. Thanks　15. solved

Unit 8 Culture Shapes Us

Lesson 43 A Visit to Chinatown

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. forks　2. bowl　3. spoon

4. chopsticks　5. underground

二、6. B　点拨：句意：尽管埃伦失去了他的右臂，但他从未放弃爬山的梦想。根据句意及语境得知是由 although 引导的让步状语从句。故选 B。

7. C　点拨：考查动词的时态。句意：——亲爱的，你在哪里？——我这就来。等我穿上鞋。根据语境应用将来时态，此处用现在进行时的结构表将来。故选 C。

8. A　点拨：考查情景交际。句意：——你介意我打开窗户吗？——当然不介意。现在请打开它吧。of course not 当然不，符合句意，故选 A。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

9. C 点拨：本题用句子结构分析法。第一空 who 引导定语从句修饰被强调部分 the boy；第二空是强调句型中的 that。

10. B 点拨：考查宾语从句。句意：——我想知道她为野餐准备了什么。——我不确定，可能她已经买了一些饮料和小吃。由宾语从句必须是陈述句语序可知选 B。

三、11. I have no idea who took the book

12. We went shopping in Chinatown

13. Did you have fun playing games

14. It is the most important festival in China

15. It is Santa Claus who brings you gifts

Lesson 44 Popular Sayings

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. B 二、2. D 3. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. human 2. pounds

3. Society 4. whether

5. similar

二、6. give up 7. is full of

8. walks of life 9. are similar to

10. other than

三、11. B 点拨：and 连接两个动词不定式，视为一个概念时，谓语动词用单数形式；视为两个概念时，谓语动词用复数形式。此处照顾父亲和母亲应该看成是一件事，故谓语动词用单数形式。

12. A 点拨：welcome 欢迎；glad 高兴的；invite 邀请；go 去。由句意“欢迎来到我们的水上公园。在这里你们可以玩得很开心。”可知选 A 项。

13. D 点拨：encourage sb.to do sth. 是固定用法，意为“鼓励某人做某事”。

14. B 点拨：句意：我妈妈说我的朋友和我相似，但是我认为她和我不同。be similar to 与……相似；be different from 与……不同。

15. A 点拨：考查宾语从句的引导词。句意：我的邻居问我昨晚是否听到巨大的噪音。whether 引导宾语从句，和 or not 连用，意为“是否”。故选 A。

Lesson 45 Different Manners

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. Though

2. guest/guests

3. praise 4. private

5. shape

二、6. B

7. A

8. D 点拨：考查固定句式。It’s one’s turn to do sth. 轮到某人做某事。

9. B 点拨：此题用词语辨析法。cost 表示“花费”时主语通常是物；spend 可指花费时间或金钱，常用于 sb. spend(s)/spent…(in) doing/on sth. 结构中；pay 表示“花费”时常用于 pay…for 结构；take 表示“花费”时通常指花费时间，常用于句型 It takes/took sb. some time to do sth.。由主语 I 和介词 on 可知应用 spend，故选 B。

10. A 点拨：考查连词辨析。though 尽管；but 但是；since 自从……以来；if 如果。上文“小托尼收到来自他朋友的礼物很高兴”和下文“礼物仅仅是一个卡片”是让步关系。故选 A。

三、11. is different from 12. pay for

13. take turns 14. in private

15. Not both; playing

Lesson 46 Home to Many Cultures

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. percent 2. are

3. official 4. is

5. alive

二、6. C 点拨：考查固定搭配。according to 意为“根据；依照”。

7. A 点拨：考查主谓一致。句意：在我们学校学生的数量超过 2 000。the number of 意为“……的数量”，作主语时，谓语动词用单数。故选 A。

8. B 点拨：本题用词语辨析法。lively 有“活泼的；生动的”的意思；living，alive，live 都有“活着”的意思，但 live 和 living 多作前置定语，故选 B。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

9. A 点拨：本题用正确把握语境法。more than 多于，不仅仅是；no more than 仅仅；not more than 至多，不超过；only 仅仅。根据句意“李小姐不仅仅是一位作家，她还是一位歌唱家。”可知用 more than。

10. A 点拨：the rest of 短语作主语时，谓语的单复数形式取决于 of 后名词（短语）或代词的单复数形式；本句前半部分用一般现在时，因此用 agree。

三、11. We sang happily on the way/On the way we sang happily

12. According to Tom, the film is wonderful

13. Is this a lively group in our class

14. People from many cultures live together

15. They have lived there since the 1980s

Lesson 47 Good Manners

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. tidy 2. accepted 3. noisy

4. offer 5. Russian

二、6. A 点拨：句意为：学好英语对我们来说是必要的。It's +形容词+for/of sb.+ to do sth. 意为“做某事是……”。其中 it 作形式主语，真正的主语是 to do…。结合选项可知 A 项符合。故选 A。

7. B 点拨：本题用正确把握语境法。accept 接受；receive 收到；write 写；collect 收集。由句意“他的家人很担心他，因为他们已经很长一段时间没收到他的来信了。”可知选 B。

8. D

9. A 点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意：——吉姆，现在天黑了。请打开房间里的灯。——好的，妈妈。由前句 Jim, it's dark now. 及常识可推知，天黑了，需要打开房间里的灯。turn on 打开；turn up 调高；turn off 关闭；turn down 调低。故选 A。

10. D

三、11. inviting; to take part in

12. tidy up 13. my first time

14. invited; to 15. it; to communicate

Lesson 48 Supper with the Bradshaws

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. gun 2. chalk

3. officer 4. react

5. tradition

二、6. C 点拨：考查副词词义辨析。句意：这场比赛确实很精彩，特别是当杰克在最后一分钟得分的时候。probably 可能，或许；exactly 确切地，准确地；especially 特别，尤其；specially 特意。结合句意可知选 C。

7. C 点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：这些天工人们正忙着安装新楼上面的窗户。be busy doing sth. 意为“忙于做某事”，是固定搭配。故选 C。

8. C 点拨：can't help doing sth. 意为“禁不住做某事”。根据句意“当王叔叔告诉我们这个消息时，我们禁不住笑了起来。”可知应选 C 项。

9. B 点拨：句意：她母亲胃痛。因此她已经派人去请医生了。send up 使向上移动；send for 派人去请；send away 发送掉，使离去；send out 分发，散发。结合句意可知选 B。

10. C 点拨：both 两者都；all 三者或三者以上都，两者谓语都用复数形式；every（三者或三者以上的）每一个，不能单独用，后要跟可数名词的单数形式；each（两者或两者以上的）每一个，可单独用。故选 C。

三、11. Are you ready to sing a song for us

12. Each of us has worked for more than ten hours

13. Maybe he has gone to Beijing

14. Are you busy with the Spring Festival

15. He never dreams of her coming

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. three

2. For example; full

3. whole

4. first

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. B 点拨：句意：——你觉得你的初中生活过得怎么样？——我认为它是愉悦快乐的，尽管我有时会遇到学习困难。if 如果；though 尽管，虽然；while 然而；当……时候；until 直到。前后表示转折关系。故选 B。

2. B 点拨：考查连词的用法辨析。句意：雨下得正大，但是没有一个学生上学迟到。句中“none of the students are late for school”与“raining heavily”构成转折关系，因此要用连词 but。故选 B。

3. B 点拨：考查状语从句之从属连词。if 如果，引导条件状语从句；though 虽然，尽管，引导让步状语从句；for 因为，连接并列句；since 自从，引导时间状语从句。句意：小杰克已经独自学会做许多事情，尽管他只有四岁。故选 B。

4. B 点拨：根据后半句中 sometimes it makes a lot of noise 与前面的 is good exercise 是转折关系，所以选择表转折的连词。因此答案选 B。

5. B 点拨：考查连词的辨析。句意：尽管我爷爷八十多岁了，但他每天练中国功夫。since 自从；though 尽管；until 直到。根据语境句意，需用 though 才符合语意。故选 B。

二、6. home 7. are 8. than

9. rest 10. Although

11. differences 12. little

13. understanding

14. respect 15. alive

Unit 9 Communication

Ⅱ Lesson 49 Get Along with Others

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. likely 2. success 3. solution

4. to communicate 5. to take

二、6. D

7. D

8. C 点拨：考查副词辨析。句意：——中国制造的许多产品在美国非常受欢迎。——是的，美国人_____可避免买中国产品。根据上文语境“中国制造的许多产品在美国非常受欢迎。”和肯定答语 Yeah 可知“美国人几乎不可能避免买中国产品。故选 C。

9. C

10. A 点拨：句意：对我们来说，与我们的同学相处好很重要。这会使我们的生活更加美好。get along well with（与某人）相处融洽；come up with 提出；catch up with 赶上；do well in 在……方面干得好。

三、11. I took your pen by mistake

12. Can Jack get along well with others

13. We had fun playing beach volleyball

14. I hardly communicate with my classmates

15. My old bike required repairing

Ⅱ Lesson 50 Tips for Good Communication

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. Remember other people's names.

二、2. A 3. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. waste 2. proper 3. passport

4. cancel 5. contact/ touch

二、6. ahead of 7. make sure

8. set a time

9. make an effort

10. not to tell

三、11. A 点拨：句意为：李明很认真，他总是检查他的练习以确保没有错误。make sure 确保，符合题意。

12. B 点拨：make a promise 许诺。句意：——戴维，你为什么如此兴奋？——因为我父亲承诺下个月他将带我去西藏。

13. B

14. A 点拨：考查连词的用法辨析。句意：如果你必须去踢足球，至少等到学校放学。根据句意及语境得知是由 if 引导的条件状语从句。故选 A。

15. A 点拨：waste time (in) doing sth. 浪费时间做某事。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 51 What Could Be Wrong?

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. alone 点拨：leave…alone 让……单独留下，让……独自呆着，不打扰。

2. read; reading 点拨：used to do sth. 过去常常做某事，be used to doing sth. 习惯于做某事。

3. getting 点拨：suggest doing sth. 建议做某事，故填 getting。

4. doing 点拨：consider doing sth. 考虑做某事，故应填 doing。

5. experiences 点拨：关键词提示法。空格前面有 one of the best，因此此空为可数名词复数形式。

二、6. C 点拨：考查短语辨析。句意：问题是，一个商人弄清楚他怎样能最好地服务他的顾客了吗？figure out 弄清楚，弄明白。

7. B 点拨：此题采用词语辨析法。句意为：——你一个人能完成这项工作吗？——能。只是自己做感觉有点寂寞。alone 在此处作副词，意为“单独地，独自地”。lonely 形容词，意为“孤独的，寂寞的”。

8. A 点拨：考查连词辨析。句意：即使你赶上 Didi 汽车，你还是会错过这次航班。even if “即使”；as if “似乎”；until “直到……为止”；before“在……之前”。上文“还是错过”和下文的“赶上 Didi 汽车”提示用 even if “即使”引导让步状语从句。故选 A。

9. A

10. A 点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意：春节期间，年轻人过去常常给长辈们磕头，但现在他们仅仅是给他们送去美好祝福。used to do sth. 过去经常做某事；be used to do sth. 被用来做某事；be used to doing sth. 习惯做某事。根据语境可知是过去经常磕头，现在不这样做了。故选 A。

三、11. A shower can cool us down

12. Don't leave your baby alone at home

13. He no more made the same mistakes

14. Wood can be used to make desks

15. Will the engineer consider accepting it

Lesson 52 The Power of a Smile

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. dining hall 2. simply 3. adapted

4. difficulties 5. somehow

二、6. C 点拨：句意：作为一名教师，王老师认为教给学生如何学习很重要。as 意为“作为”。故选 C。

7. B 点拨：考查形容词的比较等级。句意：在成都乘坐地铁比乘出租便宜得多。根据 than 判断此处要用形容词比较级形式。much + 形容词比较级形式表示“……得多”。故选 B。

8. A 点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意：任何擅长唱歌的人都可以参加我们学校的这个活动。take part in 参加；take off 起飞；take out 拿出；take care of 照顾。后面的宾语是 the activity，故此处表示参加活动。故选 A。

9. B 点拨：语境推理法。根据句中关键词 the invitation with pleasure 判断，此处应为接受了邀请。

10. D 点拨：考查短语。a way to do / of doing sth. 做某事的方法。

三、11. to watch 12. as well as

13. attend 14. help

15. adapt to

Lesson 53 Working in Groups

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. absent 2. trouble 3. secret

4. fair 5. realize

二、6. A 点拨：语境推理法。由上文句意“汤米，你永远不能让其他人知道我今天告诉你的话。”可推出下文句意“不要担心。我会保密的。”keep the secret 意为“保守秘密”，符合句意。故选 A。

7. D

8. A 点拨：have trouble with 同……闹纠纷，同……闹矛盾。句意为：这位男士经常与他的妻子闹矛盾。

9. B 点拨：句意为：在转弯前，你应降低车速。结合句意可知用 slow down。

10. D

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

三、11. We have done our share

12. You are always absent from class

13. The soldiers left in secret at night

14. He hasn't seen his parents so far

15. We are looking forward to his coming

Lesson 54 How Embarrassing!

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. ran into　2. been in touch with

3. hear from　4. is familiar with

5. reminds me to

二、6. A　点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意：——你觉得电影《芳华》怎么样？——它令人感动，它让我奶奶想起乡村生活。remind sb. of sth. 是固定短语，意为“使某人想起某事”；let sb. down 让某人失望；wake sb. up 唤醒某人。根据句意可知此处是指让奶奶想起乡村生活。故选 A。

7. A

8. C　点拨：tap sb. on the shoulder 轻拍某人肩膀，故选 C。

9. A　点拨：句子结构分析法。句意：——你认为新电影《流浪地球》怎么样？——它是如此精彩以至于我真的很喜欢它。so + 形 + that 与 such + 名 + that 均表示：如此……以至于……；too…to do 太……而不能做；enough to do 足够……去做；wonderful 是形容词用 so 修饰，结合语境选 A。

10. B　点拨：admit to sb. that… 向某人承认……。故选 B。

三、11. seems that　12. so; that; can't

13. hear from　点拨：hear from sb. 表示“收到某人的来信”，相当于 receive a letter from sb.。

14. careful enough

15. Have you made a plan for tomorrow

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. a few　2. silence　3. common

4. in order to　5. rude

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. A　点拨：考查连词。句意：“苏珊，你知道学校图书馆什么时候关门吗？”“晚上十点。”由题干语境 Ten o'clock at night.“晚上十点。”可知问的是时间，故选择时间连词 when。故选 A。

2. B　点拨：考查连词和固定搭配。句意：——我认为这几年的环境很糟糕。——是的，那将会更糟除非政府采取行动来保护它。if 如果；unless 除非；until 直到……为止。根据句意可知选 unless，take action to do 固定搭配。故选 B。

3. A　点拨：考查连词的辨析。when 当……时候；before 在……之前；until 直到……为止；after 在……之后。“生活就像一面镜子，当你朝着它微笑的时候，它也会报以微笑”，表示“当……时候”，应用 when。故选 A。

4. A　点拨：考查连词词义辨析。句意：——学生可以在上课期间上网吗？——_____ 它（上课期间上网）是为了那节课，他们是可以的。if 如果；or 或者，否则；so 所以；but 但是。根据语境可知，如果上网是为了那节课，学生就可以上网。故选 A。

5. D　点拨：考查连词辨析。句意：很多人喜欢熊猫，因为它们可爱。表示原因用连词 because。故选 D。

二、6. with　7. communication

8. misunderstandings

9. experience　10. used

11. secret　12. realized

13. argued　14. weren't

15. out

Unit 10 Get Ready for the Future

Lesson 55 Look into the Future

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. boss　2. doubt　3. wealth

4. organize　5. manages

二、6. A　点拨：句意为：每个人都想赢。但是至于我，最重要的事情是学习新东西并且玩得愉快。as for 至于；thanks to 幸亏，多亏；instead of 代替；such as 例如。结合句意可知选 A。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

7. A 点拨：词语辨析法。句意为：我们应该想出解决办法来阻止人们开车时低头看他们的手机。come up with 提出，想出；come from 来自；come out 出版；come true 实现。故选 A。

8. C

9. C 点拨：逻辑分析法。“像人一样会思考的机器人”还没有出现过，故此处应为“发明”。

10. B 点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意：在词典中查找生词是个好主意。cut up 切碎；look up 查找；put up 举起。故选 B。

三、11. As for me, I couldn't remember

12. He chose to go to Beijing

13. His novel will come out next week

14. What do you want to be

15. I doubt if he has changed his mind

Lesson 56 Manage Your Time

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. She has so many things to do every day.

二、2. C 3. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. checked 2. notebook 3. weekdays

4. sleep 5. themselves

二、6. C 点拨：考查动词辨析。句意：罗伊在伦敦工作。他每天乘公共汽车去上班大约需要半个小时。固定句型 It takes sb. some time to do sth. 意为“某人花费多少时间做某事。”。故选 C。

7. B 点拨：句意：——艾丽斯，你想和我们一起去远足吗？——真可惜！我除了今天每天有空。for 为了；except 除了，不包括；besides 除此之外还有；among 在……之间。根据句意可知是不包括今天，用 except。

8. C

9. D 点拨：a little girl 为名词短语，前面用 such；many 前面用 so。

10. B

三、11. sleepy; asleep 12. check in

13. dropped in 14. on the top of

15. learning

Lesson 57 Best Wishes

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. graduation 2. confidence

3. finishing 4. will visit 5. chatting

二、6. D 点拨：考查固定短语 the best way to do sth./the best way of doing sth. 做某事最好的方法。由 The best way 可知选 D。

7. D 点拨：句意：我的朋友们将要去不同的学校。但是我希望我们会互相保持联系。A.go back 回去；B.grow up 成长，长大；C.have a word 谈话；D.stay in touch 保持联系。结合句意可知选 D。

8. C 点拨：语境提示法。spring, summer, autumn or winter 为时间，提示空格处与时间有关。

9. D 点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：——杰克，离开卧室的时候记得把灯关掉。——好的。我不会忘的，妈妈。remember to do sth. 记住要去做某事（未做）；根据句意可知，杰克还没有离开，所以关灯这件事还没有做。Jack 与 leave 之间是主动关系，要用现在分词，故选 D。

10. C 点拨：考查宾语从句。宾语从句三个考点：1. 考查连接词；2. 考查时态；3. 宾语从句用陈述语序。根据回答 Of course. 可知上文问两小时内是否能到达广州。故选 C。

三、11. Be sure to stay in touch

12. The boys had a long friendship

13. I wish I could fly like a bird

14. I will have memories of our time together

15. She almost has no sweet snacks

Lesson 58 Ms. Liu's Speech

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. speech 2. period

3. valuable 4. achieve

5. behalf

二、6. owner

7. the most interesting

8. achievement 9. fall

10. gone

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

三、11. C

12. A 点拨：go by 流逝；run out 用完，耗尽；take off 脱下，起飞；turn up 出现。结合句意可知选 A。

13. B 点拨：the way to +地点，去……的路，故答案为 B。

14. C

15. C 点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意：你能帮助我拾起那支钢笔吗？它在你的椅子底下。ask for 请求；look for 寻找；pick up 拾起；put up 举起，张贴。根据后一句句意可知，空白处应用 pick up 表示“捡起”。故选 C。

Lesson 59 Keep Your Choices Open

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. not to go　2. closed　3. education

4. will be　5. reading

二、6. choice　7. decision

8. successful　9. education

10. graduation

三、11. A

12. D 点拨：考查 keep 的用法。keep sb. doing sth. 使某人一直做某事，故选 D。

13. B 点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：两个小时的车程后，司机决定停下来休息。decide to do sth. 决定做某事。故选 B。

14. A 点拨：or 否则；and 那么；but 但是；so 因此。根据句意：快下雨了。你最好带把雨伞，否则你会淋湿的。故选 A。

15. B 点拨：语境提示法。句意：生活就像一面镜子。当你对它微笑时，它也会对你微笑的。故选 B。

Lesson 60 Get a Good Education

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. valuable　2. advice　3. held out

4. astronauts　5. at first

二、6. D 点拨：句意为：我们一个月后就要去伦敦了。根据句意排除 ago 和 before，in 用于时间前，可排除。故选 D。

7. C 点拨：imagine doing sth. 想象做某事。句意为：我可以想象得到了这份工作。故选 C。

8. A 点拨：advise sb. to do sth. 意为“建议某人做某事”。

9. B 点拨：考查非谓语动词。第一句句意：李明，你应该尽你所能来提高你的英语水平。不定式作目的状语，故选 B。

10. C 点拨：考查动词不定式作目的状语。句意：这个男孩去医院照顾他的妈妈。

三、11. advised; to check　12. At first

13. by chance　14. held out

15. after so many years

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. looks forward to　2. foolish

3. dangerous　4. mind

5. come true

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. C 点拨：问句中的从句为宾语从句，应用将来时；答语中的从句为时间状语从句，用一般现在时表示将来。

2. B

3. C 点拨：考查连词词义辨析。句意：如果我们努力工作，永不放弃，我们将会实现我们的中国梦。前面能够实现必须在后面的前提之下，所以后面应用 if 引导条件状语从句。故选 C。

4. C 点拨：问句“你什么时候把书还给我？”，答语则应表达还书的时间，as soon as 引导时间状语从句，意为“一……就……”。

5. B 点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：对于我们来说，在过马路时接打手机非常危险。本句为固定句式“It is *adj.* for sb. to do sth.”，it 作形式主语指代动词不定式，故选 B。

二、6. government　7. to　8. to choose

9. to consider　10. come　11. to visit

12. suggestions　13. from　14. make

15. be carried

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

教材习题参考答案

Unit 7 Work for Peace

▶ Lesson 37

1 1. No, he didn't.
2. He sent him an e-mail. He tried calling him, but his phone was out of service. He sent him a text message.
3. Because Steven threw his basketball on the ground and it hit Danny's head.

2 1. polite
2. different
3. broke down
4. tell you something
5. lost 6. hungry

3 fight; beat; message; hit; angry

▶ Lesson 38

1 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F

2 2. The hotel provides a shoe-cleaning service for guests.
3. The rich land provides enough food for the people.

3 1. or 2. and 3. but 4. or
5. but 6. or, so 7. and 8. or

4 Example:
Student A: We are friends.
Student B: We study and play together.
Student C: We are friends and we study and play together.
Student A: Get up early.
Student B: We will miss the train.
Student C: Get up early, or we will miss the train.
Student A: Jenny is ill.
Student B: She can't go to school today.
Student C: Jenny is ill, so she can't go to school today.

▶ Lesson 39

2 1. in 2. with 3. to 4. in 5. of

3 1. bored 变为 boring
2. do 变为 doing
3. staying 变为 to stay
4. lock 变为 locked
5. are 变为 is

▶ Lesson 40

1 to help countries talk about their problems; 193 member states; the headquarters; fifteen members in the UN Security Council

2 Secretary-General; agreement; situation; satisfy

▶ Lesson 41

1 1. Yes, he is. 2. Steven.
3. Because she wants to help them solve the problems./Because she wants to help them make up.

2 kept silent; agreed on; mean to; After all

3 Encourage Tim and Ben to get together and talk the problem over.

▶ Lesson 42

1 1. T 2. F 3. T

2 1. Thanks to 2. knocking at
3. held a meeting
4. rather than

3 A 1. C 2. B 3. A
B 1. C 2. A 3. B

4 患难见真情。
好朋友就像一面镜子。
一个人的朋友是哪些人，决定了他自己是怎样的人。
真正的朋友是向你伸出手，触动你心灵的人。
朋友的朋友也是我们的朋友。

▶ Unit Review

Building Your Vocabulary

I. 1. check 2. snake 3. beat
4. separated 5. lock

II. 1. out of service
2. preparing for
3. provide; for
4. reached an agreement
5. in silence

Grammar in Use

He can understand French, but he can't speak it.
I fell off my bike and hurt my knees.
I know her face, but I can't remember her name.
Hurry up, or we will be late for school.
Do you want to play the game or will you just watch?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

That man never tells the truth, so nobody likes to talk with him.

June had a bad headache, so she stayed in bed.

Listening and Speaking

C B D A

Putting It All Together

1. Because they disagree with each other.
2. A person who knows both of you.
3. Try not to be angry. Listen to what your friend has to say. Then tell your point of view.

Self-Evaluation

I. Example: You are good friends, not enemies.

II. Example: During student council meetings, we have to work together, but it's not always easy for us to reach an agreement.

Unit 8 Culture Shapes Us

▶ Lesson 43

1 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T

2 glass fork spoon chopsticks knife plate bowl a bowl and chopsticks; a fork and a knife; a bowl and a spoon; a glass; a cup

PROJECT

The Spring Festival: make dumplings; buy new clothes; clean up the house; give lucky money to children; hang red lanterns; visit relatives and friends; go to a temple fair; attend a family get-together

Christmas: buy new clothes; clean up the house; sing Christmas songs; visit relatives and friends; decorate a Christmas tree; buy some Christmas gifts; attend a family get-together

Same: buy new clothes; clean up the house; visit relatives and friends; attend a family get-together

▶ Lesson 44

1 Seeing is believing.

Every dog has his day.

Actions speak louder than words.

A journey of a thousand miles begins with a single step.

Many hands make light work.

Don't be penny wise and pound foolish.

Where there is a will, there is a way.

2 2. Well begun is half done

3. many hands make light work

4. Actions speak louder than words

5. where there is a will, there is a way

3 When in Rome, do as the Romans do. 入乡随俗。

First come, first served. 先到先得。

It is never too late to mend. 亡羊补牢，为时未晚。

No pain, no gain. 没有付出就没有收获。

▶ Lesson 45

1 Canada: giving a tip to waiters and hotel workers sharing the cost of a meal in a restaurant

China: asking an adult's age

putting food on a guest's plate

2 Although people have different cultures and customs, they have the same feelings.

Brian hasn't been to China, but he knows a lot about our country.

He has been at the new school for only a few days, but he has already made many friends there.

Though Liu Feng has many friends in America, he still feels lonely.

3 1. praise 2. take turns

3. pay for

4. private

5. modest

▶ Lesson 46

1 1. Three percent.

2. The language of their first country and English or French.

3. Because many immigrants from every part of the world come to Canada.

4. People should respect and accept one another and help one another.

2 1. Canada; Canadian

2. European

3. Asian

4. differences

5. central

3 2. The price of it rose from $25 a kilogram in 2003 to $250 this year, according to the research.

3. David's weight dropped from 150 pounds last month to 120 pounds this month, according to his doctor.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

▶ Lesson 47

1 **Mr. Manner's tips for Li Ming:** tidy up the house before the guest arrives; open the door for the guest and hang up his coat; offer the guest something to drink or eat; serve the guest at the table; make the guest feel at home and talk to the guest; don't turn on the television

Mr. Manner's tips for Dong Fang: bring a small gift; follow the rules of the host's home; don't be noisy; offer to help prepare the dinner; write a thank-you note after the visit

2 1. noisy 点拨：too 修饰形容词或副词，故用 noisy。

2. Russian

3. tidy up

4. hung

▶ Lesson 48

1 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T

2 guns; reacted; were caught; officers; was praised

▶ Unit Review

Building Your Vocabulary

1. Guns
2. private
3. rules
4. praised; tidying
5. Humans
6. chalk
7. hung

Grammar in Use

1. Though/ Although it's late, the teacher is still working in his office.
2. Though/ Although it's blowing hard, they will go out to repair the street lamps.
3. Though/ Although he didn't know the poor old man, he bought lunch for him.
4. Though/ Although he made a serious mistake, his parents finally forgave him.
5. Though/ Although Bill is dead, he will be remembered by his friends.

Listening and Speaking

I. 1. Three

2. full/whole
3. first; middle; last
4. first

Putting It All Together

Example:

It's polite to put food on the guests' plates in my hometown.

Self-Evaluation

I. Example:

It is important that people from different cultures can live together in one country.

II. Although sayings are usually simple and easy to remember, they are full of deep meaning.

Though I have lived here for a long time, I still don't feel Canadian.

Unit 9 Communication

▶ Lesson 49

1 **Wang Mei:** Sometimes friends have misunderstandings.

Li Ming: Friendship requires good communication.

Yang Hao: People who know how to communicate well with others are more likely to succeed in their jobs.

Ms. Liu: It's always better to get things out in the open.

2 1. come to a solution to the problem 2. fun

3 easily hopefully exactly really seriously

1. easily 2. Hopefully
3. really 4. seriously
5. exactly

▶ Lesson 50

1 Jane—Make eye contact.

Dan—Don't interrupt others when they are talking.

Chrissy—Always keep a smile on your face.

Julie—Be aware of your body language.

2 Find a proper topic.: A; B; D

Be a good listener.: C; G

Be honest.: F

Keep your promises.: E; H

3 1. cancel 2. proper

3. passport 4. promise

4 example: I like my father best in my family because he always keeps his promise and he is a very good listener.He listens carefully when I talk to him.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

▶ **Lesson 51**

1 1. Her friend hasn't spoken to her since last Friday.
2. There is nothing we can do about it, but even if we are not friends anymore, we should still be friendly.

2 cooled down; misunderstanding; called; figured out

3 Say sorry if you hurt your friend.
Give your friend some time to cool down.
Write to your friend and ask what's wrong.
You can still be friendly even if you are not friends anymore.

▶ **Lesson 52**

1 2 1 4 3 5

2 B D A E C

▶ **Lesson 53**

1 1. Talk to Li Tian.
2. He doesn't understand the things they're learning.
3. He will try hard to do his part.

2 1. secrets
2. was absent from
3. looking forward to
4. So far
5. trouble

▶ **Lesson 54**

1 I ran into an old friend named Gao Yuan. When he tapped me on the shoulder and said my name, I couldn't figure out who he was.He seemed familiar but I forgot his name.I felt awful. We chatted for a while.Finally I had to admit that I couldn't remember his name.

2 1. returned to
2. have made plans
3. heard from
4. ran into

3 All of a sudden; turned in; hardly; award; stage; worst

▶ **Unit Review**

Building Your Vocabulary

I. 1. difficulties
2. directly
3. listener
4. misunderstandings
5. communication

II. 1. keep your promise
2. figure out
3. get along with
4. adapt to
5. succeed in

Grammar in Use

I. 1. what 2. that 3. who

II. 1. before 2. If 3. though
4. because 5. when

Listening and Speaking

I. 1. silence; kill; common; polite; chatting; introduced; interest

Putting It All Together

I. 1. Because it helps to make people feel relaxed and start a conversation when they meet for the first time.
2. Because it helps you begin a conversation and it is a general question that anyone can reply to.
3. Turn a statement into a question.

Self-Evaluation

Example: Smiling can be a passport to good communication.
She realizes that talking about problems is better than keeping them as secrets.

Unit 10 Get Ready for the Future

▶ **Lesson 55**

1 travel; boss; engineer; cooking; exciting

2 farmer; actor; doctor; police; officer; tailor; engineer; nurse; singer; journalist; cook; reporter; worker; actress; businessman; teacher; artist; astronaut; pilot; dentist

▶ **Lesson 56**

1 Organize your notes right after classes.
Make a list of all the things you need to do each week.
Plan your study time for each subject.
Have a few minutes every evening to check how your plan is going.
Do a weekly review of each subject.

2 1. review 2. asleep 3. itself
4. primary 5. weekday

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3

	MON.	TUES.	WED.	THUR.	FRI.	SAT.	SUN.
afternoon	English		Play	Maths		Play	
evening							Watch TV

▶ Lesson 57

1 Steven: Good luck with your inventions in the future!

Jenny: Be sure to always stay in touch!

Brian: Though we are going to part, our friendship will always remain.

Danny: Best of luck, everyone!

Kim: I wish you the best in everything you do.

2 I'll never forget it! —Mike

I'll always remember it! —Kim

Good luck with your new life! —Paul

Always stay in touch! —Lucas

3 We had a lot of fun together and I will remember it. I will miss all of you.And be sure to always stay in touch!

▶ Lesson 58

1 **1.** F **2.** T **3.** F **4.** T

2 Paragraph 1: Ms.Liu shares some great memories with the students.

Paragraph 2: Ms.Liu encourages the students to work hard to achieve their dreams.

Paragraph 3: Ms.Liu hopes the students will be brave in the future.

Paragraph 4: Ms.Liu gives the students best wishes and congratulations.

3 **1.** term **2.** talk **3.** succeed **4.** brave **5.** helpful

▶ Lesson 59

1 Education keeps your choices open.

When you grow up, you can be a merchant.

Do well in school, and the decision will be yours.

You may decide to be a professor.

You could be a successful farmer.

2 **1.** a title for a university teacher

2. a business person in trade

3. one who grows food and raises animals

4. a person who flies a plane

3 **1.** choices **2.** do well in **3.** graduated **4.** successful **5.** have decided

4 Example: I want to be a singer in the future because I like singing and my voice is very beautiful.

▶ Lesson 60

1 **1.** F **2.** F **3.** T **4.** T **5.** F

2 I dreamed of visiting space when I was young.

To get ready, I studied hard in school.

I became a pilot after I graduated from university.

After so many years of hard work, I got a chance to go into space.

3 **1.** graduate from **2.** At first **3.** dreamed of **4.** have to **5.** held out

4 We should get a good education and keep our eye on the goal.

▶ Unit Review

Building Your Vocabulary

I. **1.** bosses **2.** itself **3.** achieving **4.** doubt **5.** valuable **6.** speech

II. **1.** On behalf of

2. pick yourself up

3. brought tears to my eyes

4. Keep your eye on

5. fell asleep

6. On top of that

Grammar in Use

am filled; arrived; began; has been; have made; have realized

Listening and Speaking

I. **1.** She is a musician. **2.** Flying into space.

3. Because they think the job is dangerous.

4. At a music school.

5. Not at all.

Putting It All Together

1. B A C

2. a: 就在你每天上课的时候，你正在长大。

b: 你可能并不是很清楚你长大后想成为什么。

Self-Evaluation

Example:

I. I think I'd like to be a pilot.

II. Best of luck, everyone!

Good luck with your inventions in the future!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

廿年磨一剑 · 匠心铸经典

教师的备课笔记 · 学生的随身家教 · 家长的辅导工具



责任编辑：刘　军
封面题字：沈　鹏
封面设计：典点瑞泰

荣德基官方网站：http://www.rjdder.com.cn
荣德基天猫旗舰店：http://rongdej.tmall.com

荣德基初中频道

ISBN 978-7-5383-7090-2
0 6>
9 787538 390902
定价：36.80元

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料